5th PRIM

Step Ahead Series

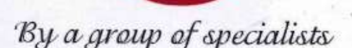
Together to a bright future

2025

Second Term



CONNECT



Contents

Part 1

Theme (3) My society

Theme (4) Being responsible

Part 2



Part (1)

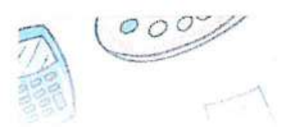
Theme (3)
My society

Unit 7 Homes in Egypt
البيوت في مصر

In this unit I will ....
- listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.
- talk about the home and furniture.
- read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes.
- understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.
- learn how to say double vowels.
- write a simple blog about an unusual home.
- research and make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home.

Objectives

Vocabulary	**The home:** armchair, balcony, cushion, closet, elevator, oven, shower, television, bedroom, kitchen, bathroom, living room **Adjectives:** unfriendly, uncomfortable, unlucky, unsafe, unhappy, unfair, annoying, awesome, awful, boring, brilliant, cool, friendly, funny, interesting gate, oven, pot, reed, roof, rug, sleeping area, linen
Language	- Saying where things are, i.e. on the right/left, in the middle of the room, on the wall - The negative prefix un-, i.e. unfriendly, uncomfortable, unlucky, etc. - Past simple affirmative and negative, i.e. I visited her house when I was five. I didn't know the answer to the teacher's question. - Past time expressions with ago, i.e. two years ago
Reading	- Story about a dangerous experience in the jungle - Text about homes in Ancient Egypt - Blog about unusual homes
Listening	- Dialog between two friends about living in a new apartment
Speaking	- Describing your own home - Talking about the perfect room
Writing	- Blog about unusual homes using a range of adjectives
Project	- Presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home
Phonics	- Correctly pronounce double vowels, e.g. pool, sheep - Correctly pronounce oo in words: /u:/, as in pool; /ʊ/ as in good; /ʌ/, as in blood
Life skills	**Decision making:** Decorating your own bedroom
Values	**Respect:** Showing respect for cultural heritage
Issues and challenges	**Cultural responsibility:** How can we preserve ancient artifacts for the future?
Inegrated cross-cultural topics	**Social studies:** How Ancient Egyptians made their homes **Project:** Presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home



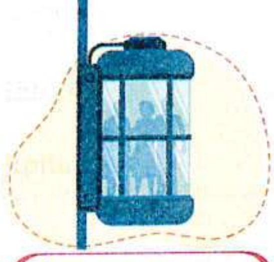







Lesson 1 The home

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس


elevator
مِصعد


closet
خِزانة - دولاب


oven
فرن


shower
دُش


armchair
كرسي ذو ذراعين


cushion
وسادة - مخدة


television
تلفاز - تلفزيون


balcony
شُرفة - بلكونة


home
بيت


house
منزل


apartment
شقة


rooms
حجرات - غرف


living room
حجرة المعيشة


bedroom
حجرة النوم


bathroom
حمام


kitchen
مطبخ



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

happy	سعيد	new	جديد
great	رائع	old	قديم
here	هنا	thanks	شكرًا
closer	أقرب	traditional	تقليدي
gift	هدية	parents	الوالدين

Question words أدوات الاستفهام

How long	كم مدة	Where	أين
Why	لماذا	What	ما - ماذا

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

Welcome to ...	مرحبًا بك في ...
Come in.	تفضل بالدخول.
since I was born	منذ ولدت
for 12 years	لمدة 12 عامًا
a new job	وظيفة جديدة
my parents had to ...	كان لزامًا على والديَّ أن ...
much bigger	أكبر بكثير
much easier	أسهل بكثير
more modern	أكثر حداثة
more space	مساحة أكثر
this part of town	هذا الجزء من المدينة
her own bedroom	حجرة نوم خاصة بها

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
work	يعمل	worked	describe	يصف	described
look	ينظر	looked	live	يعيش	lived
listen	يستمع	listened	like	يحب	liked
cook	يطهو	cooked	complete	يكمل - ينهي	completed
prefer	يُفَضِّل	preferred	move	ينتقل - يتحرك	moved
decide	يقرر	decided	share	يشارك - يتشارك	shared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
come	يأتي	came	write	يكتب	wrote
hear	يسمع	heard	say	يقول	said
have (has)	يملك - لديه	had	read	يقرأ	read

The Lesson Notes

لاحظ استخدام التعبيرات الآتية في الدرس للتعبير عن رأينا في شيء ما نحبه أو معجبين به:

- I love it. ◀ إني أحبها.
- I like this part of town. ◀ أحب هذا الجزء من المدينة.
- Very nice. ◀ جميل جدًا.
- It's lovely. ◀ إنه جميل.
- Fantastic! ◀ رائع!

ويمكن استخدام صيغة التعجب أيضًا للتعبير عن شيء ما نحبه أو معجبين به أو لإبداء الرأي:

- What a great view! ◀ ياله من منظر رائع!

Unit 7

The difference between "home" and "house"
الفرق بين كلمتي "home" و "house"

home بيت

كلمة عامة تعني أي مكان أبيت وأعيش فيه سواءً كان فيلا أو منزل أو شقة أو خيمة أو كهف وهكذا.

- The villa is a **home**.
- The house is a **home**.
- The apartment is a **home**.
- The tent is a **home**.

house منزل

تعني منزل خاص بأسرة معينة أحيانًا ما يكون بحديقة أمامه.

- My grandpa has a big **house** in a village.



Read and learn

Why is Fareeda happy? لماذا فريدة سعيدة؟

Fareeda : Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!

 **فريدة** : أهلاً دينا، مرحبًا بكِ في شقتي الجديدة! تفضلي بالدخول!

 **Dina** : Thanks! Do you like living here?

  دينا : أشكرك! هل تحبين العيش هنا؟

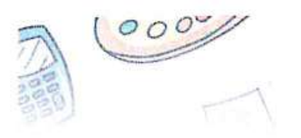
Fareeda : I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

 **فريدة** : نعم، أحب العيش هنا إنها شقة رائعة! أحب هذا الجزء من المدينة وهي أكبر بكثير من شقتنا القديمة.

 **Dina** : How long did you live in your old apartment?

  دينا : كم المدة التي عشتِها في شقتكِ القديمة؟

Fareeda : Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.





 فريدة : اثنا عشر عامًا، منذ أن ولدت، وبعدها اضطر والداي أن ينتقلا إلى وظيفة جديدة، لذلك انتقلنا إلى شقة أقرب.



Dina : So, what's better about this new apartment?

 دينا : إذن، ما الذي يميز هذه الشقة الجديدة؟

Fareeda : Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.

 فريدة : تعالٍ وشاهدي. المطبخ الجديد أكبر، والفرن أكثر حداثة. تقول والدتي أن الطهو فيه أكثر سهولة.

Dina : Very nice. And this is the living room?

 دينا : رائع جدًا، وهل هذه حجرة المعيشة؟

Fareeda : Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma.

 فريدة : نعم، كما ترين، يوجد مساحة كبيرة لذا يمكن أن يكون لدينا تلفاز أكبر. انظري إلى هذه الوسائد التقليدية. كانت هدية من جدتي.

Dina : Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?

 دينا : آه، نعم! ماذا عن حجرات النوم؟

Fareeda : We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.

 فريدة : لدينا ثلاث حجرات نوم الآن، أتشارك أنا وأختي أميرة في واحدة، لكن حجرة النوم الخاصة بنا كبيرة حقًا. ولدينا حمامين.

Dina : It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view!

 دينا : إنها جميلة! الشرفة رائعة أيضًا، ياله من منظر رائع!




Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

kitchen – living – apartment – oven

Hi! I'm Fareeda. Welcome to my new apartment! I love living here! It's a great (1) ....! The new (2) .... is bigger, and the oven is more modern. The (3) .... room is also big. There's more space so we can have a bigger television to watch our favorite programs!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bedrooms – apartment – share – bathrooms

I love my new apartment. It's much bigger than our old apartment. We have three (1) .... to sleep in. I (2) .... a room with my sister, Amira. We have two (3) .... The balcony is fantastic, too. It has a great view over the street.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. There are five (beds - windows - armchairs - closets) in front of the television for us to sit in.
2. I have two beds in my (bedroom - bathroom - living room - kitchen).
3. The (armchair - bed - closet - oven) is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.
4. I have a shower in the (bedroom - kitchen - bathroom - bedroom).
5. I have a (table - cushion - bed - closet) to put my clothes in.
6. I (move - cut - share - find) a room with my sister. Every one of us has a bed to sleep in.



7. There's more space in the (bathroom - living room - street - kitchen) so we can have a bigger television.
8. There are ten (apartments - houses - cities - streets) in the building I live in.
9. Our (closet - balcony - bathroom - kitchen) has a fantastic view. You can see the whole street from there.
10. I have two soft (cushions - televisions - armchairs - closets) on my bed.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Fareeda has a new apartment. She invites her friend Dina to see it. Fareeda loves her new apartment. It's a great one. She likes that part of town, and it's much bigger than their old apartment. She lived in her old apartment for 12 years. Fareeda's parents had to move to a new job, so they moved to a closer apartment.

In the new apartment, the kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. Fareeda's mom says it's much easier to cook in.

There's more space in the living room so they can have a bigger television. There are three bedrooms. Fareeda shares a room with her sister, Amira. And they have two bathrooms. Dina likes the apartment, too. She likes the view from the balcony. It's fantastic.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Fareeda has a new (village - house - town - apartment).
2. The opposite of the underlined word "closer" is (nearer - farther - easier - nicer).

B Answer these questions:

3. Why did Fareeda's parents move to a new apartment?
▶ ....
4. How many bathrooms are there in the new apartment?
▶ ....
5. Summarize the text in two sentences.
▶ ....



5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. living – Do – like – you – here?

▶ .... ?

2. moved – apartment – a – closer – We – to.

▶ ....

3. were – Grandma – They – a – gift – from.

▶ ....

4. better – apartment – new – What's – this – about?

▶ .... ?

5. a room – I – sister – with – share – my.

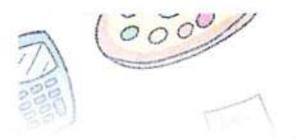
▶ ....

6. or – a house – you – an apartment – Do – live in?

▶ .... ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Where do you .... (lives)?
2. Why .... (are) your home special?
3. We .... (has) three bedrooms now.
4. Dina .... (like) the new apartment.
5. How long did you .... (lived) in your old apartment?
6. Our bedroom .... (be) really big.
7. We can .... (had) a bigger television.
8. Why .... (are) Fareeda happy?






7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. where does dina live
▶ ....

2. alexandria is in the north of egypt
▶ ....

3. cairo is a big city
▶ ....

4. does fareeda like her new apartment
▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"My house or apartment"

▶ **Ideas to help you:**

- Describe your house or apartment.
- Is it modern or old?



....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ملحوظة هامة:

○ في سؤال الـ"Paragraph" عند الإجابة على الأسئلة البادئة بفعل مساعد "Yes or No questions" لا نستخدم "Yes" أو "No" في الإجابة ونُجيب بجمل تامة ولا يجوز استخدام إجابات مختصرة "Short answers".



Lesson 2 My perfect room



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



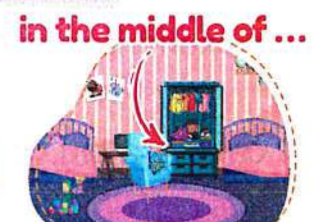
on the right
على اليمين

on the left

on the left
على اليسار



on the wall
على الحائط



in the middle of ...
فى منتصف ...

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

posters	ملصقات	howler monkey	القرد العواء (نوع من القردة)
video games	ألعاب الفيديو	scientist	عالِم
path	ممر - طريق	research (n)	بحث
indeed	حقًا	villager	قروي
sculpture	تمثال - منحوتة	frightened	خائف
garbage	قمامة	frightening	مخيف
kind	طيب	suddenly	فجأة

The prefix (un-) البادئة (un-)

comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
fair	عادل	unfair	غير عادل
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ





Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

He was deep in the jungle.	كان في عمق الغابة.
miss the bus	يفوته الأتوبيس
without a reason	بدون سبب
as a child	كطفل
all over Egypt	فى كل أنحاء مصر
in the dark	فى الظلام
my perfect room	حجرتي المثالية
local village	قرية محلية
heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة
heavy cases	حقائب ثقيلة

Prepositions حروف الجر

next to	بجوار	look for	يبحث عن
interested in	مهتم ب	close to	بالقرب من
set out	ينطلق	toward	تجاه - نحو
carry ...... away	يحمل ..... بعيدًا	go forward	يتقدم للأمام
down the river	أسفل النهر	go back	يتراجع للخلف
down the street	في الشارع	on holiday	فى إجازة
talk about	يتحدث عن	on Sunday	في يوم الأحد
help with	تساعد في	on time	في الوقت المحدد
for work	للعمل	by airplane	بالطائرة



Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

unfair	: something that happens that isn't morally right or fair
unhappy	: sad
unsafe	: dangerous
uncomfortable	: something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body
unfriendly	: not kind to someone
unlucky	: something bad happens to you without a reason

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
happen	يحدث	happened	want	يريد - يرغب	wanted
miss	يفقد - يفوته	missed	look	يبدو	looked
travel	يسافر	traveled	die	يموت	died
shout	يصيح	shouted	create	يُنشئ	created
help	يساعد	helped	smile	يبتسم	smiled
start	يبدأ	started	arrive	يصل	arrived
rain	تمطر	rained	carry	يحمل	carried
rush	يسرع - يندفع	rushed	try	يحاول	tried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
set out	ينطلق	set out	meet	يقابل	met
feel	يشعر - يحس	felt	leave	يغادر - يترك	left
sit	يجلس	sat	tell	يخبر	told
wear	يرتدي	wore	know	يعرف	knew



Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	see	يرى	saw
eat	يأكل	ate	take	يأخذ	took
drive	يقود	drove	buy	يشتري	bought
do (does)	يفعل	did	sleep	ينام	slept
be (am - is - are)	يكون	was - were	make friends	يُكَوِّن صداقات	made friends



Read and learn

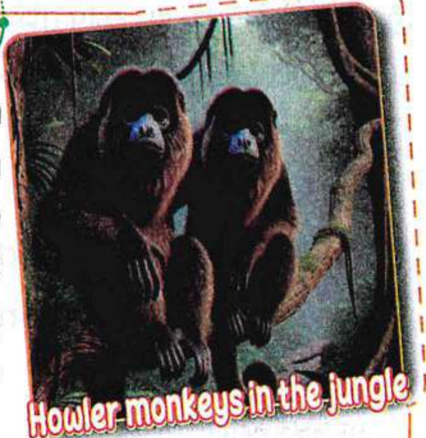


My perfect room حجرتي المثالية

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

أحب غرفة نومي. أنا أتشاركها مع أختي. على اليمين، يوجد سريري وبجواره مكتب. على اليسار، يوجد سرير أختي. في وسط الحجرة، يوجد كرسي ذو ذراعين وعليه وسادتين ويوجد دولاب كبير. على الحائط، يوجد الكثير من ملصقات الحيوانات.

Howler monkey قرد العواء



Howler monkeys in the jungle

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something frightening happened to him and he was lucky he lived to tell me about it!

عمي عالِم ويحب الحيوانات. عندما كان أصغر عمرًا، سافر كثيرًا في أمريكا الجنوبية للعمل. وقد أحبها لأن الناس كانوا ودودين وساعدوه في عمله. ومنذ ثلاث سنوات، حدث له شيءٌ مرعب وكان محظوظًا أنه عاش ليخبرني عنه!

He was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A local villager told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be unsafe."

كان مهتمًا جدًا بقرود العواء (نوع من القردة) وأراد أن يقوم ببعض الأبحاث على مجموعات عائلتهم. أخبره قروي محلي عن مكان قريب لعائلة من قرود العواء وكان عمي سعيدًا جدًا، لكن القروي قال له أيضًا، "غدًا سيكون هناك الكثير من الأمطار لذلك يمكن أن يكون الوضع غير آمن".

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the jungle. He could hear the monkeys and he looked up. He knew he was very close to them. Then the rain started. It was very heavy rain. Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back. Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and carried him away down to the river. He was very frightened.

انطلق عمي ليبحث عن عائلة قرود العواء وبعد وقت قصير كان قد دخل في عمق الغابة. استطاع أن يسمع القردة ونظر لأعلى، كان يعلم أنه قريبًا جدًا منهم. ثم بدأ هطول الأمطار، وكانت أمطارًا غزيرة جدًا. وعلى الفور أصبح الماء في كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق ليذهب للأمام أو للخلف. فجأة، أتى ماء كثير نحوه وحمله بعيدًا إلى النهر. لقد كان مرعوبًا جدًا.

Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy indeed!

وفجأة، رأى يدًا وشخصًا ما يصيح، لقد كان القروي، وأخذ بيد عمي وقال، " أنت آمن الآن." كان عمي سعيدًا جدًا بالطبع!





GRAMMAR STUDY

The prefix (un-) البادئة (un-)

- **We can use the prefix (un-) at the beginning of a word to get the opposite meaning.**
- يمكننا استخدام البادئة (un-) في بداية الكلمة لنحصل على المضاد (عكس المعنى).

(un-) means (not) (un-) تعطي معنى (not)

- The armchair is very uncomfortable. = The armchair isn't comfortable.
- He looks unhappy. = He doesn't look happy.
- The street was unsafe. = The street wasn't safe.

Prepositions & Phrases حروف جر وعبارات

- **Use these phrases when telling your partner where things are:**
- استخدم هذه العبارات عند إخبار شريكك بمكان الأشياء:

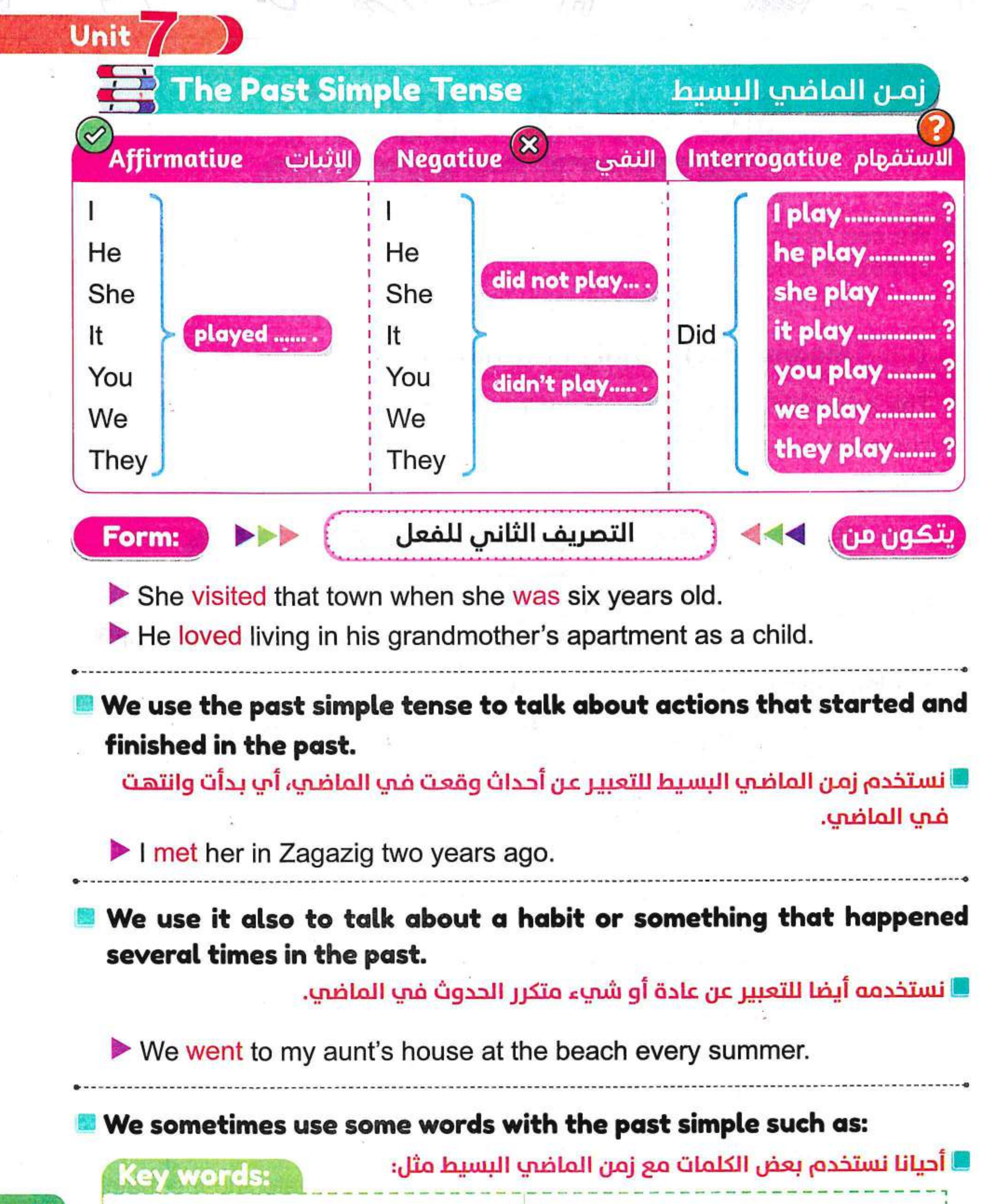
On the right,...
On the left,...
On the wall,...
In the middle of the room,...

- On the right, there is an armchair.
- On the left, there is a closet.
- On the wall, there are some posters.
- In the middle of the room, there is a table.

Verb to be in the past الفعل (يكون) في الماضي

was	were
I - He - She - It - Singular (أي اسم مفرد)	You - We - They - Plural (أي اسم جمع)

- He was lucky to have so many helping hands.
- We were busy last weekend.
- I was excited while watching the match.
- She was late for school.
- It was a rainy day yesterday.
- You were not interested in that movie.
- Fareeda and Dina were happy with the new apartment.



Unit 7

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I / He / She / It / You / We / They → played	I / He / She / It / You / We / They → did not play.... . / didn't play..... .	Did → I play............. ? / he play.......... ? / she play .... ? / it play............ ? / you play .... ? / we play.......... ? / they play....... ?

Form: ▶▶▶ التصريف الثاني للفعل ◀◀◀ يتكون من

- She visited that town when she was six years old.
- He loved living in his grandmother's apartment as a child.

We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and finished in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث وقعت في الماضي، أي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

- I met her in Zagazig two years ago.

We use it also to talk about a habit or something that happened several times in the past.

نستخدمه أيضا للتعبير عن عادة أو شيء متكرر الحدوث في الماضي.

- We went to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.

We sometimes use some words with the past simple such as:

أحيانا نستخدم بعض الكلمات مع زمن الماضي البسيط مثل:

Key words:

yesterday	أمس	**in the past**	في الماضي
ago	منذ	**last .... (week) ....**	(الأسبوع) الماضي

- I finished my homework an hour ago.
- They wanted to go to the park last Friday.

In the negative form, we use (didn't) and the infinitive of the verb.

ننفي الماضي البسيط باستخدام (didn't) ثم الفعل في المصدر (مصدر الفعل هو التصريف الأول بدون أي إضافات).

- The people didn't help him with his work.
- I didn't know the answer to the teacher's question.

In the interrogative form, we use (Did) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the infinitive of the verb.

عند عمل سؤال على الماضي البسيط، نبدأ السؤال بـ (Did) أو نضعها بعد كلمة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر.

- Did you help at home? → No, I didn't.
- Did she come early? → Yes, she did.
- What did he do yesterday? → He wrote a message to his uncle.
- What did you do last week? → I visited my grandma.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

next - cushions - share - closet

I love my bedroom. I ❶ .... it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two ❷ .... and a big ❸ .... On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

traveled - people - friendly - work

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he ❶ .... a lot in South America for ❷ .... He loved it there because the people were very ❸ .... and helped him with his work.

3 Choose the correct answer: The past simple tense

1. He (is - am - was - were) lucky yesterday.
2. They (was - were - are - is) at home last night.
3. She (were - are - is - was) unhappy last weekend.
4. I (was - were - am - are) at school with my friend yesterday.
5. We (am - are - was - were) at the zoo last Friday.
6. It (was - am - were - are) an uncomfortable chair.
7. You (are - was - were - is) unfriendly yesterday. I want you to be friendlier.
8. I (visit - visits - visited - visiting) her house when I was five.
9. We (are going - go - went - goes) to my aunt's house at the beach last summer.
10. He (meet - meeting - met - meets) her in Zagazig two years ago.
11. When she was younger, she (travels - travel - is traveling - traveled) to many different places.
12. She (missed - miss - misses - is missing) the bus yesterday.
13. It (start - starts - is starting - started) raining an hour ago.
14. She (wasn't - isn't - doesn't - didn't) wear her white dress last night.
15. I (don't - didn't - am - wasn't) see him last night.
16. We didn't (help - helps - helped - helping) with the housework yesterday.
17. She didn't (making - makes - make - made) new friends last week.



18. Did he (went - going - goes - go) to the party?
19. What did they (eats - ate - eat - eating) for lunch?
20. Did she (play - plays - played - playing) tennis yesterday?

4 Choose the correct answer: The prefix (un-)

Student's Book

1. His cat died last week. He was very (happy - unhappy - friendly - unfriendly).
2. I never sit in that green armchair - it's very (safe - unlucky - comfortable - uncomfortable).
3. Don't go down the street in the dark alone - it's very (unfriendly - unlucky - unsafe - safe).
4. That's very (unfair - fair - lucky - unlucky) - you ate everything and didn't leave any for us!
5. He's very (lucky - unlucky - safe - unsafe) because he missed the bus.
6. She's very (comfortable - uncomfortable - friendly - unfriendly) - she never smiles or tries to make friends.
7. I'm glad Mom and Dad didn't buy that couch - it was really (unhappy - uncomfortable - unfriendly - unlucky).
8. She's very (safe - unsafe - happy - unhappy) because she lost her homework.
9. We all thought the new girl was (unfriendly - lucky - friendly - comfortable) but actually she just didn't talk much.
10. That electrical wire looks very (unsafe - safe - friendly - unlucky) - don't touch it!

5 Choose the correct answer: Prepositions

1. (For - On - In - At) the right, there is my bed.
2. (To - on - At - In) the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet.
3. (In - On - At - To) the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.
4. On the right, there is an armchair with a desk next (of - to - in - at) it.
5. (To - At - On - In) the left, there is my sister's bed.



6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. When we went to Sharm El-Sheikh on holiday, we .... (meet) some new friends. SB
2. She .... (create) a fantastic sculpture from the garbage a year ago. SB
3. We .... (carry) our heavy cases to the car an hour ago. SB
4. His grandma .... (go) to Aswan last year. SB
5. Yesterday, my cousin .... (come) to visit us. SB
6. He looks .... (happy). He doesn't look happy.
7. The armchair is very .... (comfortable). It isn't comfortable.
8. They .... (aren't) at home yesterday.
9. His cat died last week. He was very .... (happy).
10. I never sit in that green armchair – it's very .... (comfortable).
11. I didn't .... (knows) the answer to the teacher's question.
12. Don't go down the street in the dark alone – it's very .... (safe).
13. That's very .... (fair) – you ate everything and didn't leave any for us!
14. They didn't .... (came) here by airplane.
15. He's very .... (lucky) because he missed the bus.
16. I nearly .... (miss) the train home!
17. We .... (drive) to the market and .... (buy) a present for a friend.
18. I .... (sleep) all the way back home.
19. We .... (have) a great time.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. uncle - a - is - My - scientist.

   ▶ ....

2. make - a - bedroom - perfect - What things?

   ▶ .... ?







3. lots of - are - There - animals - posters.

▶ ....

4. It - rain - heavy - very - was.

▶ ....

5. uncle - was - frightened - My - very!

▶ .... !

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. they didn't go to the beach on sunday ▶ ....
2. we went to sharm el-sheikh on holiday ▶ ....
3. what things make a perfect bedroom for you ▶ ....
4. i love my bedroom ▶ ....
5. his grandma went to aswan last year ▶ ....

9 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"My perfect bedroom"

▶ Ideas to help you:

bed - cushions

....

....

....

....

....



....

....

You can use the following expressions:

▶ On the right,... ▶ On the left,... ▶ In the middle of the room,...
▶ On the wall,...



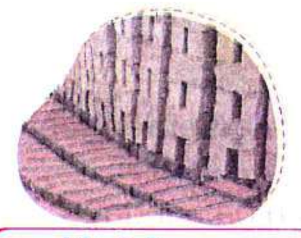


Lesson 3 Ancient Egyptian Homes

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



ancient Egyptian homes
البيوت المصرية القديمة



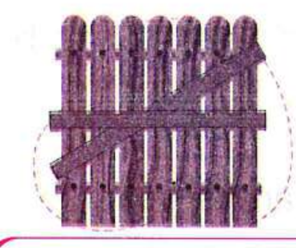
mud bricks
طوب لَبِن (من الطين)



flat roofs
أسقف مسطحة



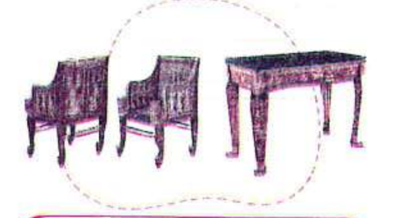
reed mat
حصيرة من البوص



gate
بوابة



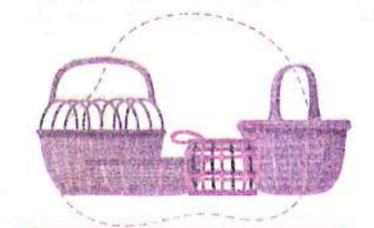
two floors
طابقان



furniture
أثاث



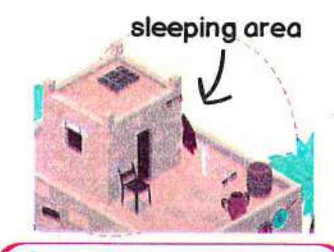
pots
أواني



baskets
سِلال



storing crops
تخزين المحاصيل



sleeping area
منطقة للنوم



cities
مدن



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

papyrus	نبات البردي	wooden boxes	صناديق خشبية
countryside	الريف	metal boxes	صناديق معدنية
outside	بالخارج	special style	طابع خاص
all right	على ما يرام	cool wind	رياح باردة

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

mud from the river	طين من النهر
close together	بالقرب من بعضها
by the banks of the Nile	على ضفتي النيل
at night	ليلاً
To keep their homes cool.	لكي تبقي منازلهم باردة.
on hot nights	في الليالي الحارة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	paint	يدهن - يطلي	painted
cover	يغطي	covered	save	يوفر	saved
join	ترتبط	joined	store	يخزن	stored
wash	يغسل	washed	use	يستخدم - يستعمل	used



Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
think	يفكر- يعتقد	thought
build	يبني	built
drink	يشرب	drank
sleep	ينام	slept

Present		Past
keep	يحفظ - يربي (حيوانات)	kept
grow	يزرع	grew
fall	يسقط - يقع	fell
go	يذهب	went

Pronunciation: The double vowel words with "ee" or "oo":

ee		oo	
tree	شجرة	spoon	ملعقة
sheep	خروف	roof	سطح
seed	بذرة	school	مدرسة
queen	ملكة	pool	حوض - حمام سباحة

- **In English there are words with double vowels, like pool and sheep. When there is a double "e" in a word, the sound is long, as in:**

- عند وجود "ee" في الكلمة، يكون الصوت طويل مثل:

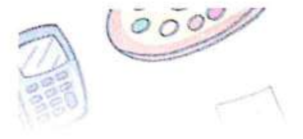
e.g. three, keep, and cheese

- **When there is a double "o" in a word, the sound is long, as in:**

- عند وجود "oo" في الكلمة، يكون الصوت طويل مثل:

e.g. school, tool, and spoon










Saying "oo" in words:

- **When you see "oo" in a word, you can say /u:/, as in:**
- عندما ترى "oo" في الكلمة ، يمكن أن تنطقها /u:/ مثل:

e.g. pool and spoon

- **We can also pronounce "oo" as a shorter sound, /ʊ/, as in:**
- ويمكن أيضًا أن ننطق الـ "oo" كصوت قصير، /ʊ/ مثل:

e.g. good

- **We can also pronounce "oo" as /ʌ/, as in:**
- ويمكن أيضًا أن تنطق الـ "oo" /ʌ/ مثل:

e.g. blood

/u:/	/ʊ/	/ʌ/
school - smooth food - zoo noon - spoon - pool	book - cook wood - wool good	flood blood



Read and learn

Ancient Egyptian Homes البيوت المصرية القديمة

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls.

في مصر القديمة، بنى العديد من الناس بيوتهم قريبًا من النيل. لقد استخدموا ماؤه للشرب والطبخ والغسيل كما استخدموا طين النهر لصنع الطوب لمنازلهم. صنعت قوالب الطوب اللَّبِن حوائط قوية جدًا.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

أراد قدماء المصريين أن تحتفظ بيوتهم بالبرودة، وساعدهم الطوب اللَّبِن في تحقيق ذلك. كما طلي بعض الناس بيوتهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة. كان لكل منازل القدماء المصريين أسقف مسطحة، والتي كانت الجزء الأكثر برودة في المنزل. عادة ما كانت العائلات تطبخ وتأكل وتستريح وتنام فوق الأسطح في الليالي الحارة.

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

اختلف الأثاث في البيوت المصرية القديمة كثيرًا عن يومنا هذا. كان هناك حصيرًا للجلوس والنوم فوقه. واستخدموا ورق البردي لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب، وهذا أبقي الحشرات خارج المنزل. في كل منزل، كانت توجد أواني طعام ضخمة، وسلال لتخزين المحاصيل، وصناديق خشبية للملابس. لم يمتلك الكثير من الناس أسِرّة أو كراسي.

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space so they could build more houses.

في المدن، عاش الناس متقاربين، ولذلك بنوا منازلهم أكثر ارتفاعًا، بطابقين. ووفر هذا مساحات مما أتاح لهم بناء المزيد من البيوت.

City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

انضمت بيوت المدينة معًا، مثل اليوم (شقق في بناية مشتركة). أما في الريف، عادة ما كانت المنازل بطابق واحد فقط، وكان لها حديقة حيث قاموا بزراعة الخضراوات وتربية الدجاج هناك.

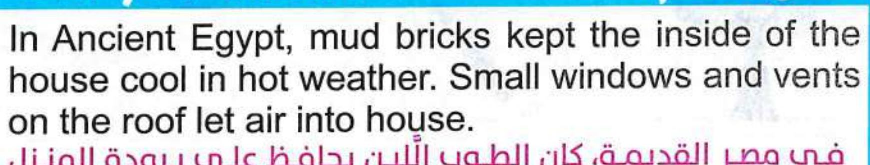
A poem قصيدة

By the banks of the ancient River Nile,
Egyptian houses had a special style:
Dark inside with small windows,
Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows.
Outside under the stars at night,
One family together, feeling all right.
Mud from the Nile made their walls
Safe and strong, and never to fall.

على ضفاف نهر النيل القديم،
كان للبيوت المصرية طابعا خاصًا:
مظلمة بالداخل، ونوافذ صغيرة،
وحصائر بوص فوق السطح حيث تهب النسمات الباردة.
وفي الخارج تحت نجوم الليل،
أسرة واحدة مجتمعة شاعرةً بالأمان.
بنى طمي النيل حوائطهم
قوية وآمنة، لا تسقط أبدًا.



Did you know? هل تعلم؟



In Ancient Egypt, mud bricks kept the inside of the house cool in hot weather. Small windows and vents on the roof let air into house.

في مصر القديمة، كان الطوب اللِّبِن يحافظ على برودة المنزل من الداخل في الطقس الحار. وكانت النوافذ الصغيرة والفتحات في السقف تسمح بدخول الهواء إلى داخل المنزل.

Term 2

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

drinking – bricks – Egypt – mud

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for ❶ ...., cooking, and washing. They also used ❷ .... from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud ❸ .... made very strong walls.

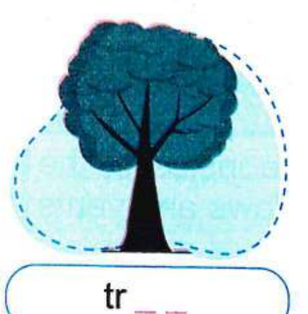
2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

relaxed - roofs - mud - bricks

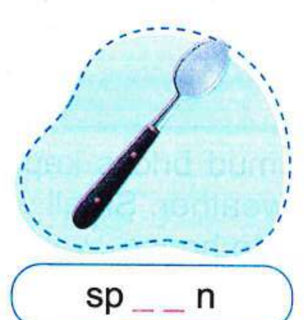
Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud ❶ .... helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat ❷ .... which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, ❸ ...., and slept there on hot nights.

3 Complete the double vowel words with "ee" or "oo":

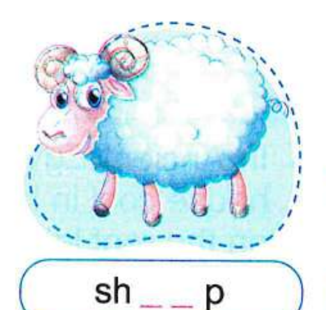




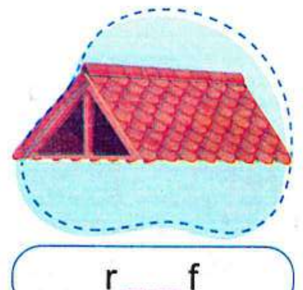
tr _ _



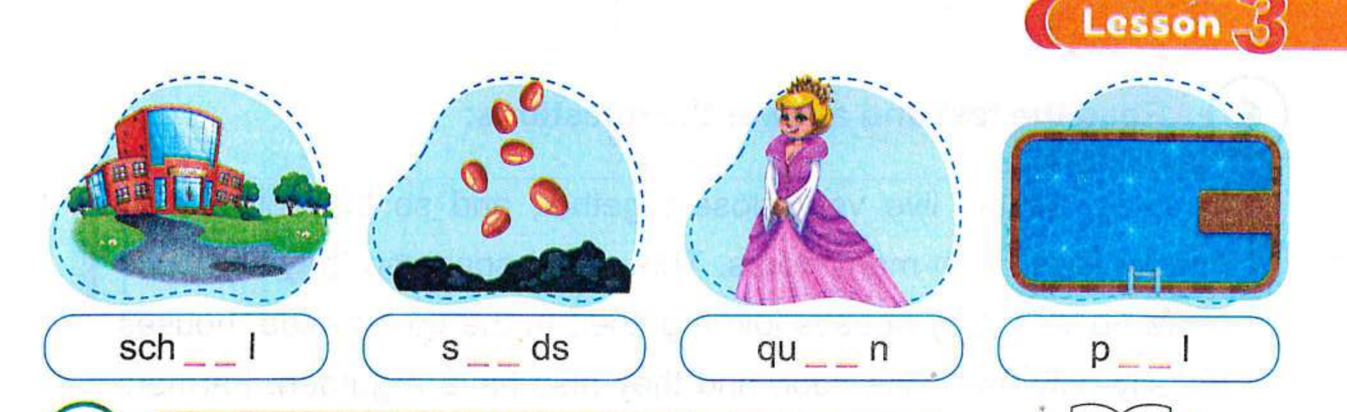
sp _ _ n



sh _ _ p



r _ _ f



4 Put the «oo» words in the correct column in the table: Student's Book

~~school - book - flood~~ - smooth - cook - blood - food - zoo - wood - wool - noon - spoon - pool - good

/u:/	/ʊ/	/ʌ/
school	book	flood
....	....	....
....	....	....
....	....	

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. They used (boats - fish - mud - boats) from the river to make bricks for their houses.
2. The (roof - wall - floor - mat) is the top part of a building.
3. Tables, chairs and closets are (walls - furniture - beds - tools).
4. There were reed (windows - doors - closets - mats) to sit and sleep on.
5. There were large (tools - beds - walls - pots) and baskets for storing crops.
6. In cities, people lived very (far - alone - close - open) together.
7. This large building has ten (roofs - floors - doors - walls). It's very tall.
8. Ancient Egyptians (kept - grew - raised - threw) vegetables.
9. Ancient Egyptians (flew - grew - planted - kept) chickens.
10. The River Nile has two (banks - floors - beaches - shores).



6 Read the text and answer the questions:

In cities, people live very close together, and so they build their houses taller, with many floors. This saves space so they can build more houses. City houses join together. In the countryside, houses usually only have one floor, and they also have a garden. Farmers grow vegetables and keep chickens there.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. People live very close together in (deserts - villages - mountains - cities).
2. The underlined word "they" refers to the (floors - roofs - people - houses).

B Answer these questions:

3. What do farmers grow? ▶ ....
4. What are the houses like in the countryside? ▶ ....
5. Give a suitable title to the text. ▶ ....

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. In Ancient Egypt, many people .... (make) their homes near the Nile.
2. Ancient Egyptian homes all .... (has) flat roofs.
3. Where did people .... (built) their homes in Ancient Egypt?
4. The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes .... (not be) the same as it is today.
5. The Ancient Egyptians .... (stores) their clothes in wooden boxes.

8 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. had – homes – flat – Egyptian – roofs – Ancient.

▶ ....

2. made – walls – very – The mud – strong – bricks.

▶ ....

3. people – What – use – did – their homes – to build?

▶ .... ?

4. homes – Ancient Egyptians – near – made – the Nile – their.

▶ ....

5. usually – In – houses – the countryside, – one floor – had.

▶ ....

6. their – did – homes – Where – Ancient Egyptians – build?

▶ .... ?

9 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what do you think ancient egyptian homes were like ▶ ....
2. they saw the banks of the river nile ▶ ....
3. in egypt houses have a special style ▶ ....
4. where did ayman go last monday ▶ ....

10 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"Ancient Egyptian homes"

▶ Ideas to help you:

mud bricks - near the Nile

....

....

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4 5 Writing & Project



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



blog
مُدَوَّنَة



blogging
التدوين (الكتابة في مدونة)



topic
موضوع



ecological
بيئي



ecologically friendly
صديق للبيئة



unusual
غير نمطي - غير معتاد



Netherlands
دولة هولندا



landscape
منظر طبيعي



farmhouse
منزل ريفي



upside down
مقلوب - رأسًا على عقب



at the top
في القمة



a lot of light
الكثير من الضوء



Lessons 4-5



architect مهندس معماري



actually حقاً - بالفعل



opinion رأي

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

online blog	مدونة عبر الإنترنت	related to	متعلق بـ - مرتبط بـ
living things	الكائنات الحية	environments	بيئات
farms	مزارع	fields	حقول

Vocabulary Study (SB Student's Book)

blogging	: to write about something in an online blog
ecological	: related to living things and their environments

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
heat	يُسَخِّن	heated	check	يفحص - يراجع	checked
discuss	يناقش	discussed	fit	يناسب - يليق	fitted
research	يبحث	researched	invite	يدعو - يعزم	invited

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
find	يجد	found	speak	يتحدث	spoke
give	يعطي	gave	make sure	يتأكد	made sure







Read and learn

Dalida's blog مدونة داليدا

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

Wednesday, 8th November الأربعاء 8 نوفمبر

Unusual homes بيوت غير تقليدية

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect, so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. It's really awesome!

مرحبا! اسمي داليدا، وأحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة عبر الإنترنت. سأكتب هذا الأسبوع عن البيوت غير التقليدية. هذا موضوع شيق جدًا بالنسبة لي، وذلك لأن والدتي مهندسة معمارية، لذا فهي تأخذني أحيانًا لأرى بعض الأماكن المبهرة. إنها رائعة جدًا!



I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online - it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool!

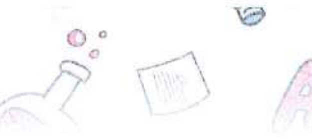


عثرت على هذا البيت العجيب في هولندا عبر الإنترنت. إنه مقلوب رأسًا على عقب! كان في الأصل بيتًا ريفيًا قديمًا وأراد الناس تغييره ليصبح بيتا معاصرًا. وهذا جيد جدًا لأن النوافذ الآن كلها في الأعلى، وتُدخِل الكثير من الضوء. يحب السكان المحليون هذا المنزل لأنه يليق جيدًا بالمنظر الطبيعي حوله من مزارع وحقول. وهو أيضًا صديق للبيئة، لأنهم يستخدمون الهواء والماء والشمس للتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل، وهذا شيء ممتاز!

What do you think of it? Do you like it?

ما رأيك فيه؟ هل تحبه؟






Writing a blog كتابة مدونة

When writing a blog, follow these tips: عند كتابة مدونة اتبع الآتي:

1. Write about something you like and enjoy. اكتب عن شيء تحبه وتستمتع به.
2. Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, It's) and words like 'awesome' and 'cool'.
   اكتب للقراء كما لو كنت تتحدث إليهم، واستخدِم اختصارات مثل (I'm – It's) وكلمات مثل (awesome – cool).
3. Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis: 🙂 ☹️ 😠 😯
   استخدم علامات تعجب (!) و وإيموجيز (رموز تعبيرية).
4. Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.
   أبدِ رأيك وادعُ قراءك أن يبدوا آراءهم.
5. Check that your spelling is correct. تأكد من صحة التهجئة في كتاباتك.
6. Use adjectives in a blog to make it interesting.
   استخدم الصفات في المدونة لكي تجعلها مشوّقة.

Positive adjectives صفات إيجابية				Negative adjectives صفات سلبية	
funny	مَرِح	cool	لطيف - رائع	awful	مريع - فظيع
awesome	مُدهش	friendly	ودود	annoying	مزعج
brilliant	مذهل - رائع	interesting	شيق	boring	ممل

The presentation العرض التقديمي

عند تقديم عرض تقديمي اتبع الآتي:

1. Think about your presentation. What can you write? What headings and pictures can you use? Can you draw a picture?
   فكر في عرضك التقديمي، ماذا يمكنك أن تكتب؟ ما العناوين والصور التي يمكن أن تستخدمها؟ هل يمكنك رسم صورة؟
2. Decide who will do what. Make sure you both have something to do.
   حدد دورك ودور زميلك، وتأكد من أن لكل منكما مهام تقومان بها.
3. Make your presentation. Check your work.
   قم بعمل عرضك التقديمي، وراجعه.
4. Practice your presentation. Make sure you both speak.
   تمرن على عرضك التقديمي، واحرص على أن يتحدث كلاكما.
5. Give your presentation to the class.
   قم بتقديم عرضك التقديمي للفصل.

Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

landscape – down – ecological – house

In the Netherlands, local people like the upside ❶ .... house because it fits in very well with the local ❷ ...., which is farms and fields. It is also very ❸ .... because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool!

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Ecological - Blogging - Emailing - Messaging) means to write about something in an online blog.
2. This house is (usual - small - unusual - normal). It's upside down.
3. The word (landscape - blogging - messaging - ecological) means that something is related to living things and their environments.
4. The (builder - architect - worker - writer) designs buildings.
5. In the countryside, there are a lot of (blogs - farmhouses - towers - large buildings).
6. The local (landscape - emailing - people - buildings) of the countryside includes farms and fields.
7. This food is (brilliant - interesting - delicious - awful). I don't like it.
8. I don't like (annoying - cool - funny - nice) sounds.
9. My sister's drawings are (bored - boring - awful - awesome). They are fantastic.
10. All my friends are (cool - unfriendly - awful - strange). I like all of them.

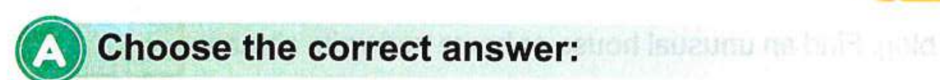
3 Read the text again and answer the questions:

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect, so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. It's really awesome!







A Choose the correct answer:

1. Dalida likes (gaming - blogging - painting - drawing).
2. The opposite of the underlined word "unusual" is (strange - usual - different - awesome).

B Answer these questions:

3. What's Dalida writing about this week?
▶ ....
4. Where does Dalida's mom take her?
▶ ....
5. What does Dalida's mom do?
▶ ....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Local people .... (likes) it because it fits in very well with the local landscape.
2. All the windows .... (be) at the top, so you get a lot of light.
3. You .... (is) going to research an Ancient Egyptian home.
4. What does the home .... (looked) like on the outside?
5. .... (Are) it in the city or in the countryside?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. about – blogging – like – different – I – things.
▶ ....
2. interesting – very – topic – This – is.
▶ ....
3. the – visit – Dalida – house – didn't – unusual.
▶ ....
4. like – unusual – Local – this – people – house.
▶ ....





6 Write your blog. Find an unusual house or home and write about it:

Student's Book

Write 30-40 words:

- Where it is and give some information about it.
- What you think about it and why.



....

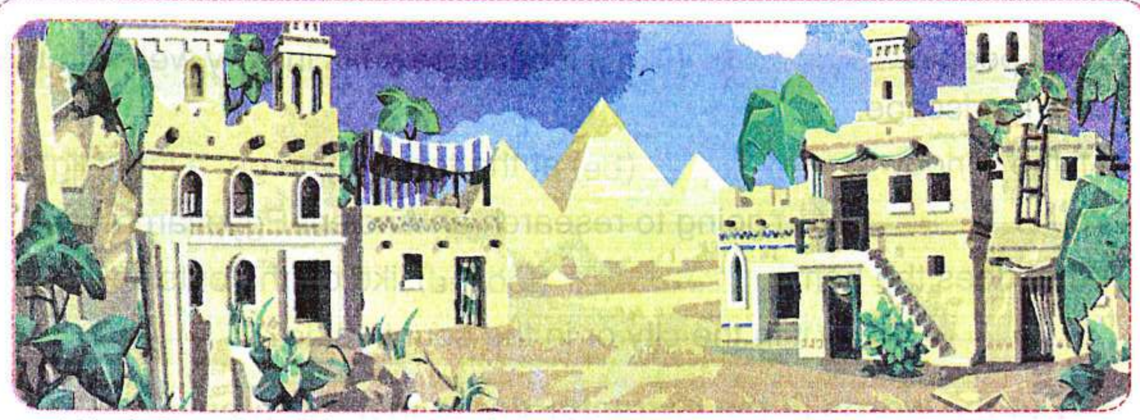
....

....

....

7 Give a presentation to your class:





Work in pairs. Discuss and decide.

You are going to research an Ancient Egyptian home.

Find a home to talk about to give a presentation to your class. Get into pairs and think about:

- Where is the home? Is it in the city or in the countryside?
- What does the home look like on the outside?
- What is inside the home?
- Would you like to live in a home like this one? Why? Why not?
- ....

....

....

....



(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)





1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4.5Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (222) آخر الكتاب.

1. Fareeda loves her (bathroom - living room - bedroom).
2. In the middle of the room, there is a/an (armchair - cushion - bed).
3. On the (right - left - wall), there are lots of posters of animals.

2 Read and complete the dialogue: (8Ms)

cushions - apartment - town - kitchen

Fareeda : Hi Dina, welcome to my new ❶ ....! Come in!

Dina : Thanks! Do you like living here?

Fareeda : I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of ❷ .... and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

Dina : What's better about this new apartment?

Fareeda : Come and see. The new ❸ .... is bigger.

Dina : Very nice. And this is the living room?

Fareeda : Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional ❹ .... They were a gift from Grandma.

Dina : It's lovely! Congratulations!

3 Read the text and answer the questions: (7.5Ms)

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls.

Term 2

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

A Answer these questions:

1. Why did some people paint their homes white? ▶ ....
2. What were the coolest parts of the houses? ▶ ....

B Choose the correct answer:

3. In Ancient Egypt, many people made their (hospitals - schools - homes) near the Nile.
4. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and (reading - washing - playing).
5. The mud bricks made very (strong - weak - uncomfortable) walls.

4 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. He is (comfortable - lucky - unlucky). He fell off his bike.
2. I (give - gave - gives) him a present last weekend.
3. The (roof - floor - mat) is high, but you can climb up to it.
4. Where did she (go - goes - went) last week?
5. Our oven is (old - modern - awful). My mom says it's much easier to cook in.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (5Ms)

1. you - like - the upside - Do - house - down? ▶ .... ?
2. houses - Egyptian - style - had - a special. ▶ ....
3. writing - homes - about - I'm - unusual. ▶ ....
4. you - do - Where - live? ▶ .... ?
5. was - interested in - very - He - monkeys. ▶ ....



Test 2 on Unit 7


Total
30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (222) آخر الكتاب.

1. My uncle is a (vet - teacher - scientist - doctor) and loves animals.
2. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for (fun - holiday - vacation - work).
3. People in South America were very (friendly - bad - unlucky - unfriendly).
4. About (three - thirty - thirteen - fifteen) years ago, something frightening happened to him.

2 Choose the correct answer: (1.5Ms)

1. I live in a/an (house - apartment - kitchen - closet) on the third floor.
2. I (create - cover - sleep - share) a room with my sister. We live in it together.
3. It was very (fair - unfair - unsafe - friendly) to lose yesterday's match. We played very well.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

beds – pots – mats – crops

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed (1) .... to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large (2) .... and baskets for storing (3) .... and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

Dina is a student. She's ten years old and she has a brother and a little sister. Dina walks to school with her brother. She likes her school and her teachers. Her father is a dentist. Every day, he drives his car to work. Her mother works in a primary school in Shobra. In the evening, she helps Dina and her brother with their homework, and then they all sit and watch TV.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "little" means (big - beautiful - old - young).
2. Dina goes to school (by car - by bus - on foot - by train).

B Answer these questions:

3. What does Dina's mother do? ▶ ....
4. How does Dina's father go to his work? ▶ ....
5. How many people are there in Dina's family? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. modern – your – or – home – Is – old? ▶ .... ?
2. the – is – My – right – bed – on. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. He didn't .... (ate) fish yesterday.
2. The armchair was .... (comfortable). She didn't want to buy it.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (4Ms)

1. where does Amir live ▶ ....
2. Ancient egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"My perfect room"

▶ Ideas to help you:

- What is it?
- Why do you like it?

....

....

....

....



Unit 8 At the doctor's
في العيادة

In this unit I will ....

- listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments.
- practice using *have* to talk about illnesses.
- listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient.
- learn about and use the prefixes un, *ir*, *il*, and *im*.
- understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds.
- write a short paragraph about staying healthy.
- plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster.

Objectives

/ocabulary	**Health:** ankle, back, cold, cough, earache, headache, shoulder, sore throat, stomachache, toothache, backache, unwell, relative, crowded, staff, injection, corridor, helpful, hospital, patient, bandage, sunscreen, honey and lemon, pill, cut knee, sunburn, treatment, wound, bacteria, infect, heal, scissors, insect bite, cream, cleansing, wipe, medical gloves, rubber, band, safety pin, soap
Language	- Using have to talk about illness, i.e. I have a headache. - Do you have an earache? - Asking about illness, i.e. What's the matter? - Where does it hurt? - Negative prefixes, i.e. un- (unusual), ir- (irresponsible), il- (illegal), im- (impossible)
Reading	- Text about a hospital in India - Presentation about staying healthy
Listening	- Dialog between mom and son about feeling unwell - Dialog between doctor and patient
Speaking	- Talking about illness
Writing	- A short paragraph about staying healthy
Project	- Poster about what to include in a first-aid kit
Phonics	/f/ and /v/ minimal pairs, e.g. *van – fan, life – live* Correctly pronounce the negative prefixes *un- (unusual), ir- (irresponsible) il- (illegal), and im- (impossible)*
.ife skills	**Critical thinking:** Working out treatments for illnesses
Values	**Respect:** Respecting other people's opinions - Appreciating science
;sues and hallenges	**Therapeutic health:** What do you do to stay healthy?
;rated cross-tural topics	**Math:** Bar charts **Project:** Poster about what to include in a first-aid kit



Lesson 1 They didn't come to the club!



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



toothache ألم في الأسنان



earache ألم في الأذن



backache ألم في الظهر



headache ألم في الرأس - صداع



sore throat التهاب في الحلق



hurt يصيب - يجرح - يؤلم



cold زكام - انفلونزا



cough كحة - سعال



ankle الكاحل - رسغ القدم



shoulder كتف



stomach معدة



problem مشكلة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

club	نادي	last night	الليلة الماضية
football practice	تدريب كرة القدم	swimming	السباحة
coach	مدرب	honey	عسل
dentist	طبيب أسنان	medicine	دواء
careful	حريص - حذر	sick people	المرضى

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

I hope so, too.	أتمنى هذا، أيضًا.
feel better	يشعر بتحسن
worried about	قَلِق بشأن
What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟ - ماذا بك؟
have a good day	يحظى - يقضي بيوم جميل
Are you OK?	هل أنت بخير؟
You should stay home.	يجب أن تبقى في المنزل.
How do you feel?	كيف تشعر؟

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
stay home يبقى في البيت	stayed home	number يُرَقِّم	numbered
talk يتحدث	talked	hope يأمل	hoped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
hurt يصيب - يؤلم	hurt	tell يخبر	told
come يأتي	came	feel يشعر - يحس	felt
have - has يمتلك - يتناول	had	say يقول	said
go يذهب	went	think يعتقد - يفكر	thought



Unit 8

The Lesson Notes

- **What's the matter?** ◀ ما الأمر؟ - ماذا بك؟ - مِمَّ تشكو؟
- **نستخدم هذا السؤال عند سؤال شخص عن حاله ويمكن أيضاً استخدام تعبيرات أخرى مثل:**
- **How do you feel?** ◀ كيف تشعر؟
- **Are you OK?** ◀ هل أنت بخير (على ما يرام)؟

- **لاحظ استخدام (a) أو (an) قبل أسماء الأمراض كما في التالي:-**

▶ When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home.

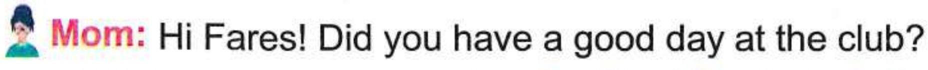
▶ Amr has an earache.

▶ I have a backache.

Read and learn



How does Fares feel today? كيف يشعر فارس اليوم؟



Mom: Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?





الأم : أهلًا فارس. هل كان يومك جيدًا في النادي؟

Fares: Not really. Five people didn't come to the club today!



فارس: ليس تمامًا. لم يحضر خمسة أشخاص إلى النادي اليوم!

Mom: Oh no! Are they OK?



الأم : أوه لا! هل هم على ما يرام؟

Fares: No, they have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr has an earache from swimming.

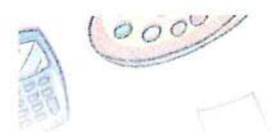


فارس: لا، لديهم مشاكل. ألم صديقي طارق من كاحله في تمرين كرة القدم ليلة أمس. وعمرو لديه ألم في الأذن من السباحة.

Mom: What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a toothache.



الأم : ماذا عن ابنة عمتك لمى؟ قالت عمتك أن لديها ألم في الأسنان.







Fares: No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!


فارس: لا، لم تكن هناك. أظن أنها ذهبت لطبيب الأسنان. اثنان من أصدقائي لديهما انفلونزا. أخبرنا المدرب أن نتوخى الحذر. في حالة حدوث سعال أو التهاب في الحلق، يجب علينا البقاء في المنزل!

Mom: How do you feel?


الأم : كيف تشعر؟

Fares: Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.


فارس: حسنًا، ظهري يؤلمني وأنا قَلِق بشأن أصدقائي. آمل أن يشعروا بتحسُّن غدًا.

Mom: I hope so, too!

الأم : آمل ذلك، أيضًا!



Read and learn



Mom: What's the matter, Dina? Do you have a toothache?

Dina: Yes. My tooth hurts!

الأم: ما الأمر يا دينا؟ هل لديكِ ألم في أسنانك؟

دينا: نعم. أسناني تؤلمني!



Mom, can I have some milk and honey for my cough, please?

هل أستطيع أن أتناول بعضًا من اللبن والعسل للكحة، من فضلك يا أمي؟





Mom: What's the matter, Wael? Does your stomach hurt?

Wael: No, I have a headache.

الأم: ما الأمر يا وائل؟ هل معدتك تؤلمك؟

وائل: لا، أشعر بصداع.



Ouch! My shoulder hurts!

أي! كتفي يؤلمني.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

In Ancient Egypt, doctors often used honey as medicine to help sick people.

في مصر القديمة، غالبًا ما كان يستخدم الأطباء عسل النحل كدواء لعلاج المرضى.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hurt – come – swimming – have

Hi I'm Fares! I didn't ❶ .... a good day at the club. Five people didn't come to the club today! They aren't OK. They have problems. My friend Tarek ❷ .... his ankle at football practice last night. Amr has an earache from ❸ .... My aunt said my cousin Lama had a toothache. I think she went to the dentist.



2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Do you have a sore (elbow - head - shoulder - throat)?
2. Lama had a (headache - throat - toothache - backache). She went to the dentist.
3. Tarek hurt his (ear - throat - head - ankle) at football practice last night. He can't walk well.
4. I have a (headache - toothache - backache - shoulder). My back hurts.
5. Amr has a/an (sore throat - stomachache - earache - headache) from swimming. His ear hurts.
6. When we have a (problem - earache - sore - cough) throat, we should stay home!
7. Two of my friends have a (backache - cold - earache - toothache). They cough a lot.
8. When your head hurts, you have a (backache - earache - headache - toothache).
9. Milk and honey can help with a/an (cough - earache - cookies - toothache). They are good for your throat.
10. I can't talk. My (back - shoulder - throat - ankle) hurts.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Fares had a bad day at the club. Because five people didn't come to the club! His friends have problems. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice. And Amr has an earache from swimming. Lama wasn't there. She went to the dentist. Two of his friends have a cold. The coach told them to be careful. When they have a cough or a sore throat, they should stay home! Fares has a backache and he's worried about his friends. He hopes they'll feel <u>better</u> tomorrow.



Unit 8

A Choose the correct answer:

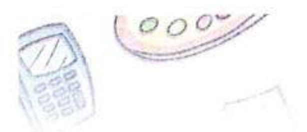
1. Lama has a (toothache - headache - backache - earache).
2. The opposite of the underlined word "better" is (good - best - bad - worse).

B Answer these questions:

3. Why didn't Fares have a good day at the club?
   ▶ ....
4. What did the coach tell them?
   ▶ ....
5. Give a suitable title to the text.
   ▶ ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. you – at – Did – have – a good day – the club?
   ▶ .... ?
2. swimming – from – has – Amr – earache – an.
   ▶ ....
3. careful – be – The coach – to – told – us.
   ▶ ....
4. you – How – feel – do?
   ▶ .... ?
5. about – my – worried – friends – I'm.
   ▶ ....
6. throat – Do – have – sore – a – you?
   ▶ .... ?
7. stomach – Does – hurt – your?
   ▶ .... ?



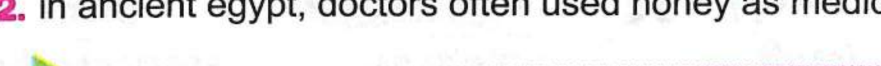



8. Dina – matter, – What – the – is?

▶ .... ?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What jobs can people .... (doing) in a hospital?
2. How does Fares .... (feels) today?
3. When we .... (has) a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!
4. They didn't .... (came) to the club!
5. I hope I'll .... (feeling) better tomorrow.
6. Fares' back hurts. He .... (have) a backache.
7. Do you .... (had) a toothache?



6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. how does fares feel today

▶ ....

2. in ancient egypt, doctors often used honey as medicine

▶ ....

3. my friend tarek hurt his ankle

▶ ....

4. i think lama went to the dentist

▶ ....

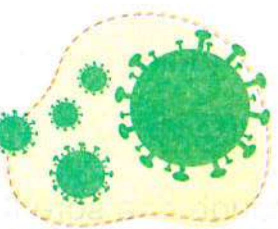
Lesson 2 How are you?



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



hospital مستشفى



illness مرض



sick person شخص مريض



patients مرضى



unwell ليس على مايرام - مريض



bandage ضمادة



cut (n) جُرح



injection حقنة



medicine دواء



staff طاقم العمل



relatives أقارب



stomachache ألم في المعدة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

corridor	رواق - ممر	care for	يهتم بـ
treat	يعالج	look after	يعتني بـ
helpful	مفيد - متعاون	family member	فرد من العائلة
crowded	مزدحم	instead of	بدلاً من
busy	مزدحم - مشغول	alone	بمفرده
wonderful	رائع	playground	ملعب - فناء - ساحة اللعب

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

do something special	يقومون بشيء مميز
I don't feel well.	أنا لست على ما يرام.
Sleep well.	نم جيدًا.
Take this medicine.	خذ هذا الدواء.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
treat	يعالج	treated	visit	يزور	visited
turn into	يحول إلى	turned into	look after	يعتني بـ	looked after
return	يعود - يرجع	returned	care for	يهتم بـ	cared for
clean	ينظف	cleaned	change	يُغيِّر - يتغير	changed
travel	يسافر	traveled	worry	يقلق	worried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
fall over	يقع - يسقط	fell over	become	يصبح	became
hurt	يؤلم	hurt	teach	يُعلِّم - يُدرس	taught
give	يعطي	gave	know	يعرف	knew
sleep	ينام	slept	take	يأخذ	took
see	يرى	saw	put	يضع	put





Unit 8

Read and learn

What's the matter with Ashraf? ماذا أصاب أشرف؟

Ashraf: Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.

أشرف: أهلًا دكتور. أشعر بالإعياء.

Doctor: What's the matter, Ashraf? Do you have a headache?

الطبيب: ما المشكلة يا أشرف؟ هل تشعر بصداع؟

Ashraf: No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.

أشرف: لا يا دكتور، لا أشعر بصداع.

Doctor: Do you have a stomachache?

الطبيب: هل تعاني من ألم في المعدة؟

Ashraf: No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.

أشرف: لا يا دكتور، معدتي لا تؤلمني.

Doctor: Do you have a toothache?

الطبيب: هل تؤلمك أسنانك؟

Ashraf: No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache. I have ... I have ... Achoo!

أشرف: لا يا دكتور، أسناني لا تؤلمني. عندي.. عندي.. آتشوو!

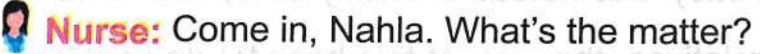
Doctor: Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

الطبيب: أوه يا عزيزي، أنت مصاب بنزلة برد! ابق في المنزل، ونم جيدًا، وتناول هذا الدواء.



Lesson 2





What's the matter with Nahla? ماذا أصاب نهلة؟

Nurse: Come in, Nahla. What's the matter?

 **الممرضة :** تفضلي يا نهلة، ما المشكلة؟

Nahla: I fell over in the playground.

 **نهلة :** لقد سقطت في ساحة اللعب.

Nurse: Oh, dear. Where does it hurt?

 **الممرضة :** أوه يا عزيزتي. ما الذي يؤلمكِ؟

Nahla: Here. I have a cut on my arm.

 **نهلة :** هنا. لدي جرح في ذراعي.

Nurse: Oh, yes, I see. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.

 **الممرضة :** آه، نعم، أراه. لا تقلقي، سأنظف الجرح وأضع ضمادة عليه.

Nahla: Thank you, nurse.

  **نهلة :** أشكركِ أيّتها الممرّضة.

A special hospital مستشفى مميزة

In a hospital in Bangalore, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family members. In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone.

في مستشفى في بنجالور، وهي مدينة في جنوب الهند، يوجد الكثير من المرضى. تعالج المستشفى المرضى من جميع أنحاء الدولة. وكل مريض يصاحبه حوالي عشرة من أفراد عائلته. إنه أمر غير معتاد في الهند أن يذهب مريض إلى المستشفى بمفرده.





Family usually go with their unwell relative. This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.

عادةً ما تذهب العائلة مع قريبهم المريض. وهذا يعني أن المستشفى غالبا ما تكون مزدحمة ومشغولة. ولكن بدلاً من إخبار أفراد العائلة أنه لا يمكنهم زيارة أقاربهم المرضى، يقوم أفراد الطاقم الطبي في المستشفى بشيء مميز. إنهم يحوّلون المشكلة إلى شيء مذهل، وذلك عن طريق إقامة فصول لتعليم العائلة كيفية العناية بالشخص المريض. على سبيل المثال، يتعلم البعض كيفية تغيير الضمادات، ويتعلم آخرون كيفية إعطاء الحقن.

Each afternoon, staff from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms. The nurses become teachers and the family members - and sometimes even the patients - become the students. Not only does this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients return to the hospital now.

في ظهيرة كل يوم، يقوم أفراد الطاقم الطبي بتحويل الطرقات إلى فصول. يتحول طاقم التمريض إلى معلمين، ويتحول أقارب المرضى، وأحيانا المرضى أنفسهم، إلى طلاب. وهذا لا يساعد طاقم المستشفى فحسب، ولكنه أيضًا يساعد العائلات في رعاية ذويهم عند الرجوع إلى المنزل. يعلم الطاقم أن هذه الدروس قد نجحت لأن العديد من المرضى لا يعودون إلى المستشفى مرة أخرى.





Verb to have يمتلك - يملك

has - have

has	have
He - She - It - Singular (أي اسم مفرد)	I - You - We - They - Plural (أي اسم جمع)

- **We use (has - have) to talk about illnesses.**

- **نستخدم الأفعال (has - have) عند الحديث عن الأمراض.**

- I have a headache.
- Amir has a stomachache.
- They don't have a toothache.
- She doesn't have a cold.
- Do you have an earache? → No, I don't have an earache.
- Does Aya have a cough? → No, she doesn't have a cough.



تذكر أن:

◄ ننفي الفعل (have) باستخدام كلمة (don't) قبله وننفي الفعل (has) باستخدام كلمة (doesn't) قبله ثم الفعل في المصدر (بدون إضافات) أي تتحول (has) إلى (have).
وكذلك عند عمل سؤال نستخدم (do - does) مع الفعل في المصدر (have).



The prefixes: "un – ir – il – im"

- We can add the prefixes (un – ir – il – im) to make the opposite of an adjective:
- أحيانًا نحصل على المضاد أو عكس الصفة بإضافة بادئة في أول الكلمة وهذه البادئة قد تكون (un – ir – il – im):

Prefix البادئة	Root word أصل الكلمة		Opposite word الكلمة المضادة	
un-	usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
	well	بحالة جيدة	unwell	ليس على ما يرام
	happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
	safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن
	fit	لائق بدنيًا	unfit	غير لائق بدنيًا
ir-	responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول
	regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم
il-	legal	قانوني - شرعي	illegal	غير قانوني - غير شرعي
im-	possible	ممكن	impossible	غير ممكن - مستحيل
	polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب - وقح
	moral	أخلاقي	immoral	غير أخلاقي

Note that: لاحظ أن:

- When the word begins with (r), we use the prefix (ir).
- When the word begins with (l) we use the prefix (il).
- When the word begins with (m) or (p), we use the prefix (im).

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Complete the summary of the text with the words in the box: Student's Book

helpful - hospital - injection - staff - patients - relatives

The text is about a ❶ .... in India. It is a very busy place that treats ❷ .... from all over the country. People usually travel to the hospital with many ❸ .... so this means the hospital is always very crowded. At the hospital, the ❹ .... teach the family members how to do useful things, like changing a bandage or giving an ❺ .... This is ❻ .... for both the staff and the patients.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bandage – matter – hurt – cut

I'm Nahla. I fell over in the playground. I ❶ .... my arm. I have a ❷ .... on my arm. The nurse will clean it and put a ❸ .... on it.

3 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. The (house - school - hospital - club) is a place that treats patients.
2. The hospital is a very busy place, so this means the hospital is always very (crowded - crowd - empty - clean).
3. In an Indian hospital, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give (injections - patients - ill - illnesses).



4. At an Indian hospital, the (corridors - relatives - staff - people) teach the family members how to do useful things.
5. The staff at this hospital are (help - helpful - patients - crowded).
6. The hospital (cuts - treats - ill - hurts) patients from all over the country.
7. The staff of the hospital care for the (patients - relatives - members - crowd) to get better soon.
8. With every patient, there are about ten family (patients - trees - members - parks).
9. I ate something bad. I have a (backache - closets - stomachache - headache).
10. You should take your (sandwiches - bag - coffee - medicine) when you are sick.

4 Choose the correct answer: Grammar

1. Amir (was - is - has - have) a stomachache.
2. I (am - has - have - were) a headache.
3. She (has - have - was - is) an earache.
4. We (are - has - have - were) a cold.
5. They (aren't - don't - doesn't - isn't) have a toothache.
6. He (isn't - don't - weren't - doesn't) have a sore throat.
7. You (have - has - are - wasn't) a cold. You should stay home.
8. They (are - were - has - have) cuts on their arms.
9. She doesn't (has - have - do - is) a stomachache.
10. (Has - Do - Does - Is) Ali have an earache?
11. (Have - Does - Do - Are) you feel well?
12. Does she (has - have - do - is) a toothache?
13. He doesn't (is - has - was - have) a cough.
14. Does he (have - having - has - is) a headache?
15. Does Salma (was - has - is - have) a cold?





5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. an – you – earache – Do – have? SB

▶ .... ?

2. sore – a – I – throat – have. SB

▶ ....

3. a – has – He – cold. SB

▶ ....

4. Nader – have – Does – headache – a? SB

▶ .... ?

5. well – feel – don't – I.

▶ ....

6. have – don't – stomachache – I – a.

▶ ....

7. hospital – crowded – is – often – The.

▶ ....

8. have – I – on – a cut – arm – my.

▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. In India, it is .... (usual) for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. He goes with his family.
2. It's .... (legal) to take your friend's things without telling him.
3. He feels .... (well). He is sick.
4. It's .... (moral) to say bad words to your friend.
5. She is .... (responsible). She is still young.
6. It's .... (possible) to play tomorrow's match. His leg is broken.
7. He feels .... (happy). He looks sad.



8. The bridge is .... (safe). Don't cross it.

9. I'm .... (fit). I should eat healthy food and play sports.

10. It's .... (polite) to shout in the class.

11. The verb go is .... (regular).

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The hospital .... (treating) patients from all over the country.

2. What .... (are) the matter with Ashraf?

3. Some people .... (learns) how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.

4. Salma .... (have) a cold.

5. My throat really .... (hurting)!

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. come in gamila

▶ ....

2. did karim hit his ear with a ball

▶ ....

3. in a hospital in india there are many patients

▶ ....

4. what part of her body has nahla hurt

▶ ....









Lesson 3 The power of honey

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



cut knee
جرح في الركبة



pills
حبوب دواء



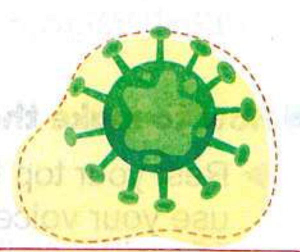
sunburn
التعرض لحروق الشمس



sunscreen
كريم واقي من الشمس



skin
جلد



bacteria
بكتيريا



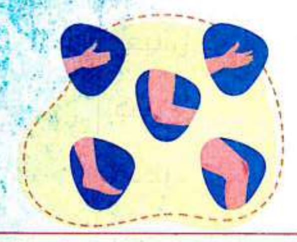
medical care
رعاية طبية



treatment
علاج



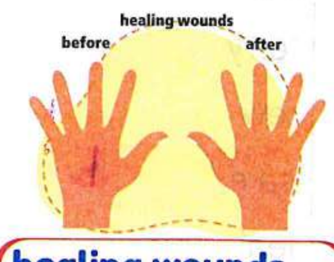
treating illnesses
علاج الأمراض



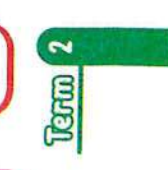
injuries (sing. injury)
إصابات



wounds
جروح



healing wounds
التئام (شفاء) الجروح





Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

honey	عسل	scientist	عالِم
lemon	ليمون	sweet substance	مادة حلوة (مسكرة)
types of honey	أنواع من العسل	recently	حديثًا - مؤخرًا
bees	نحل	exactly	تمامًا - بالضبط

Pronunciation: the /f/ and /v/ sounds:

How to make the /v/ sound: **كيفية نطق الصوت /f/:**

- Rest your top teeth on your lower lip. Blow, but don't use your voice!
- ضع أسنانك العلوية على شفتك السفلية. انطق ولكن لا تستخدم صوتك! (أحبالك الصوتية لا تتحرك).

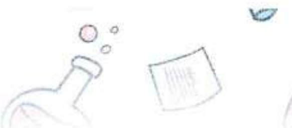
How to make the /v/ sound: **كيفية نطق الصوت /v/:**



- Rest your top teeth on your lower lip. Blow, but do use your voice!
- ضع أسنانك العلوية على شفتك السفلية. انطق ولكن استخدم صوتك! (أحبالك الصوتية تتحرك)

/f/		/v/	
frog	ضفدع	vet	طبيب بيطري
scarf	كوفية - وشاح	vegetables	خضراوات
fruit	فاكهة	television	تلفاز
fan	مروحة	van	عربة مغلقة
life	حياة	leave	يترك - يغادر
ferry	مركب - معدية	live	يعيش
few	قليل	very	جدًا
safe	آمن	view	منظر
leaf	ورقة شجر	save	يوفر - يدخر
fine	جيد	lovely	جميل







أضف إلى معلوماتك:

- تنقسم الأصوات الساكنة إلى (voiced)، وهي الأصوات التي تهتز فيها الأحبال الصوتية عند نطقها مثل:
(b – d – g – j – l – m – n – r – v – w – y – z – th /ð/ "there").
- والنوع الآخر من الأصوات الساكنة هي الـ (voiceless)، وهي الأصوات التي لا تهتز فيها الأحبال الصوتية عند نطقها مثل:
(ch – f – k – p – s – sh – t – th /θ/ "thing").

Math

bar chart	مخطط بياني - مخطط شريطي	**free-time**	وقت الفراغ
survey	استطلاع - استبيان	**activities**	أنشطة
result (n)	نتيجة	**popular**	شعبي - محبوب
information	معلومات	**stay healthy**	يظل بصحة جيدة

Vocabulary Study (SB Student's Book)

wound	: an injury that damages your skin
treatment	: medical care to help you get better
heal	: to get better
bacteria	: very small things that can make you ill

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	kill	يقتل	killed
heal	يلتئم - يشفي	healed	mix	يخلط - يمزج	mixed
contain	يحتوي على	contained	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة	stayed healthy
ask	يطلب - يسأل	asked	try	يحاول	tried
watch	يشاهد	watched	damage	يُتلف	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
cut	يقطع - يجرح	cut	leave	يغادر - يترك	left
read	يقرأ	read	make	يصنع	made
get better	يتحسن	got better	do	يفعل	did



Read and learn

Honey عسل النحل



Do you like honey? Perhaps you enjoy eating it for breakfast. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa? But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses.

هل تحب عسل النحل؟ ربما تستمتع بأكله على الإفطار، أو تستمتع به في البسبوسة الحلوة؟ ولكن هل تعلم أن العسل ليس طعامًا فقط؟ إنه يستخدم أيضًا كعلاج لبعض الإصابات والأمراض.

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

في بعض الدول، استُخدِم العسل من قِبل الأطباء لآلاف السنين. كان أول استخدام له لمداواة الجروح بواسطة الأطباء المصريين منذ حوالي 5,000 عام. ومؤخرًا، حاول العلماء اكتشاف سبب كون العسل جيدًا جدًا في المساعدة على التئام الجروح ومعالجة الأمراض.

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only



that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

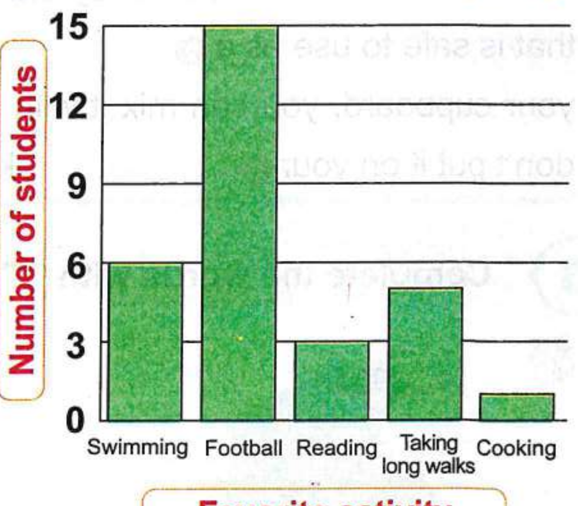
يعرف العلماء أن بعض أنواع العسل تحتوي علي بعض المواد التي تساعد على قتل البكتيريا، مما يساعد على التئام الجروح بشكل أسرع. ولكن عليك أن تكون حذرًا، فالعسل الذي يستخدمه الأطباء هو عسل خاص وهو الوحيد الآمن للاستخدام كعلاج. لذلك، إذا كان لديك برطمان عسل في خزانة المطبخ، يمكنك خلطه مع الحليب كي يساعدك في التخلص من السعال، ولكن لا تضعه على جرحٍ في رُكبتك!

bar chart المخطَّط البياني

- A bar chart is a way of showing information. Last week, 30 students were asked about their favorite free-time activity to stay healthy. Here is the result of their survey. Which favorite activity was enjoyed by the biggest number of students?

المخطَّط هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات. الأسبوع الماضي، تم سؤال 30 طالب عن نشاطهم المفضل في وقت الفراغ للبقاء بصحة جيدة. إليك نتيجة الاستطلاع. ما هو النشاط المفضل الذي تمتع به أكبر عدد من الطلاب؟

Favorite activity	No. of students
Swimming	6
Football	15
Reading	3
Taking long walks	5
Cooking	1



Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wounds – illnesses – healing – treatment

Honey isn't only a food. It is also used as a ❶ .... for some injuries and illnesses. In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat ❷ .... by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for ❸ .... wounds and treating illnesses.

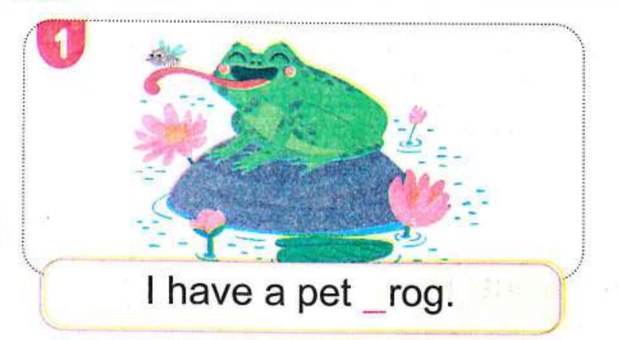
2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

heal – cough – cut – treatment

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to ❶ .... more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a ❷ .... So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your ❸ .... knee!

3 Complete the words with "f" or "v":



1


I have a pet _rog.

2


Hani is a _et.



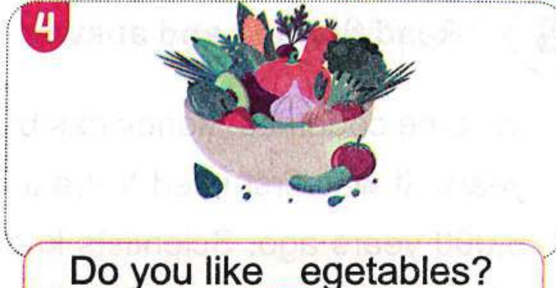


3



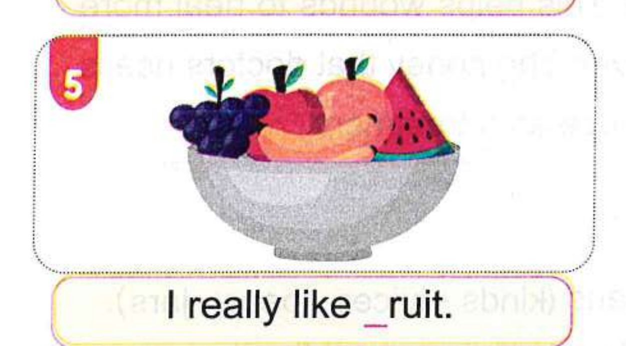
I have a very long scar_ .

4



Do you like _egetables?

5



I really like _ruit.

6



We like watching tele_ision.

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. Some types of honey can help to kill (injure - injuries - bacteria - wounds).
2. Honey is used as a (cut - bacteria - treatment - lemon) for some injuries and illnesses.
3. Honey was first used to treat (wounds - pills - kills - sunscreens) by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago.
4. Honey is so good for (healing - feeling - selling - sunscreen) wounds and treating illnesses.
5. If it's sunny, you can put (wounds - pills - sunscreen - medicine) on your skin.
6. Bees make (fruit - money - honey - funny).
7. Doctors use a special honey that is safe to use as a (wound - pill - treatment - cut).
8. Some types of honey can help to (heal - treat - sell - kill) bacteria.
9. You should drink water after taking (pills - cream - sunscreen - illnesses).
10. Doctors and nurses always give us medical (car - care - medicine - cart).




5 Read the text and answer the questions:

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "types" means (kinds - juices - bees - jars).
2. Honey has been used by Egyptian doctors around five (hundred - thousand - million - numbers) years ago.

B Answer these questions:

3. How can honey help with wounds?
   ▶ ....
4. What's special about the honey that doctors use?
   ▶ ....
5. Summarize the text in two sentences.
   ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Bees .... (makes) honey.
2. Hani .... (are) a vet.
3. Some types of honey can .... (killing) bacteria.
4. Which food is the .... (more) popular?
5. Do you .... (liked) vegetables?
6. I .... (has) a pet frog.



7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. cut – knee – I – my – last week.
   ▶ ....

2. like – you – honey – Do?
   ▶ .... ?

3. honey – Bees – make.
   ▶ ....

4. watching – like – We – television.
   ▶ ....

5. vegetables – you – Do – like?
   ▶ .... ?

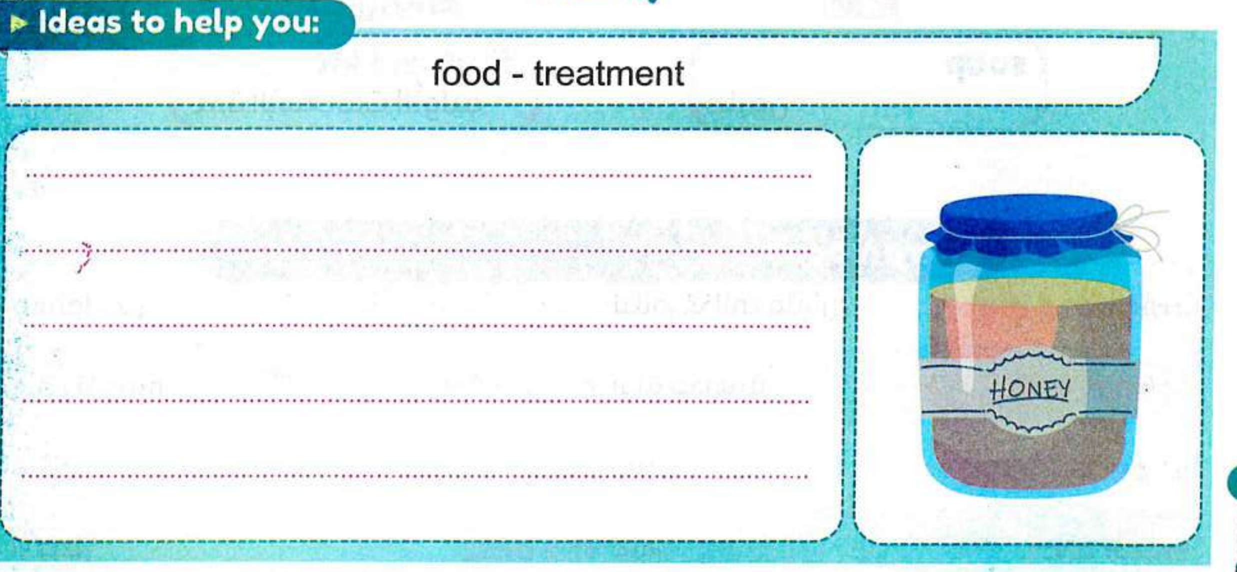
6. is – food – the most – Which – popular?
   ▶ .... ?

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"Honey"

▶ **Ideas to help you:**

food - treatment





Lessons 4 5 Writing & Project



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



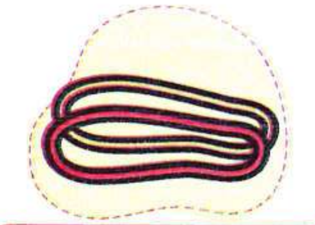
insect bite cream
كريم للدغات الحشرات



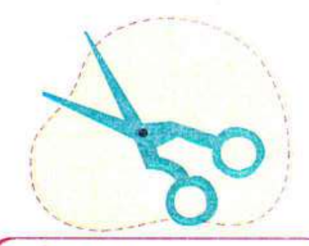
cleansing wipes
مناديل مُطهِرة



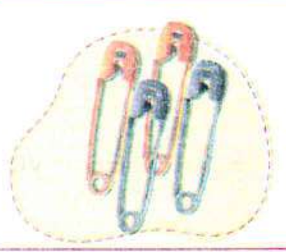
medical gloves
قفازات طبية



rubber bands
أربطة مطاطية



scissors
مقص



safety pins
دبابيس آمنة في الاستخدام



soap
صابون



first-aid kit
عدة الإسعافات الأولية

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن	responsible for	مسئول عن
school trip	رحلة مدرسية	presentation	عرض تقديمي
expert	خبير	early	مبكرًا
important	هام	the best	الأفضل

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

eating healthy food	تناوُل طعام صحي
getting enough sleep	الحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم
drinking plenty of water	شُرب الكثير من الماء
playing sport	ممارسة الرياضة
doing exercise	ممارسة التمارين الرياضية
spending time with friends	قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء
eating vegetables	تناوُل الخضراوات
reading books	قراءة الكتب
visiting a doctor	زيارة الطبيب
in addition to this	بالإضافة إلي ذلك
What could you do better?	ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل أفضل؟

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
focus on	يركز على	focused on	remember	يتذكر	remembered
pack	يحزم – يُوَضِّب	packed	need	يحتاج	needed
want	يريد	wanted	move	يتحرك - ينتقل	moved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
spend time	يقضي وقت	spent time	get	يحصل على	got
take	يأخذ	took	get up	ينهض - يستيقظ	got up
eat	يأكل	ate	drink	يشرب	drank

Term 2





Read and learn

Staying healthy الاعتناء بالصحة



My presentation today is about staying healthy. It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.

عرضي التقديمي اليوم عن «الاعتناء بالصحة». من المهم جدًا أن نأكل الأطعمة الصحية كالفواكه والخضراوات، وأن نلتزم بنظام غذائي متوازن. وهناك العديد من الأشياء الأخرى التي يمكننا فعلها للحفاظ على صحتنا.

You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

عليك بممارسة التمارين الرياضية يوميًا، فمن المهم جدًا أن يتحرك جسدك بشكل مستمر. تعتبر ممارسة الرياضة في المدرسة أو مع أصدقائك وسيلة جيدة للتمرين.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

شيء آخر يمكنك فعله هو أن تذهب للنوم مبكرًا، فمن المهم أن تنال قسطًا كافيًا من النوم. يعتقد الخبراء أن الشخص يحتاج إلى النوم من 8 إلى 9 ساعات كل ليلة.

In addition to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus on being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك، من أفضل السبل للبقاء بصحة جيدة هي قضاء بعض الوقت مع أصدقائك. فليس جسدك فقط هو ما يحتاج إلى الاعتناء به، يجب أن تخصص بعض الوقت للتركيز على أن تكون سعيدًا أيضًا. قضاء وقت مع العائلة والأصدقاء هي وسيلة جيدة لتحقيق ذلك.



Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

get – sleep – exercising – drink

To stay healthy, it's very important to ❶ .... plenty of water. This keeps your body working well. It's especially important if it's a very hot day or if you're ❷ .... You should also get between eight and nine hours of ❸ .... every night.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

family – time – Spending – healthy

One of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep ❶ ...., you should make time to focus on being happy, too. ❷ .... time with your ❸ .... and friends is a great way to do this.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. It's important to eat (junk - healthy - bad - unhealthy) foods.
2. Try to do some exercise to (drink - stay - spend - send) healthy.
3. You should (sleep - play - eat - drink) between eight and nine hours every night.
4. (Spending - Wasting - Playing - Drinking) time with your friends is good for your health.
5. To stay healthy, it's very important to (play - drink - eat - make) plenty of water.
6. It's important to (make - get - stay - come) enough sleep.
7. (Health - Spending - Going - Playing) sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.



8. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to be (happy - unhappy - sad - sleep).

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

There are lots of other things that you can do to look after your health. You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

In addition to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. It's very important to keep your body (moving - sleeping - eating - relaxing).
2. The opposite of the underlined word "best" is (better - worse - bad - worst).

B Answer these questions:

3. How is playing sport important?
▶ ....
4. Why should you go to bed early?
▶ ....
5. Give a suitable title for the text.
▶ ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What do you .... (doing) to stay healthy?
2. You should .... (sleeps) between eight and nine hours every night.
3. It .... (are) really important to eat healthy foods.





4. There .... (is) lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.

5. You should .... (did) some exercise every day.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. important – foods – healthy – It's – eat – to.

▶ ....

2. do – should – You – every day – exercise – some.

▶ ....

3. stay healthy – do – What – to – you – do?

▶ .... ?

4. to – important – It's – enough – sleep – get.

▶ ....

7 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"What do you do to stay healthy?"

▶ Ideas to help you:

food and diet - sleeping









....

....

....

....

....



Test 3 on Unit 8

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)



Total
30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4.5Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (222) آخر الكتاب.

1. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill (insects - birds - bacteria).
2. Some types of honey help wounds to (treat - heal - cut) more quickly.
3. The honey that doctors use is (safe - unsafe - dangerous) to use as a treatment.

2 Read and complete the dialogue: (8Ms)

toothache - earache - ankle - throat

Mom : How are your friends, Fares?

Fares : They have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ❶ .... at football practice last night. And Amr has an ❷ .... from swimming.

Mom : What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a ❸ ....

Fares : No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore ❹ ...., we should stay home!

Mom : I hope they will feel better tomorrow.

Fares : I hope so, too!

3 Read the text and answer the questions: (7.5Ms)

In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their unwell relative. This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something

special. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.

A Answer these questions:

1. Is it usual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone in India?
▶ ....

2. What do family members learn at that hospital? ▶ ....

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The underlined word "unwell" means (nice - good - sick).
4. The hospital is often very (free - crowded - empty) and busy.
5. Some people learn how to change (injections - bandages - sunscreen).

4 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. He is putting a (bandage - pill - medicine) on his knee because he has a cut.
2. It's (safe - unsafe - unwell) to cross a road full of cars.
3. She has a (toothache - backache - headache). Her head hurts.
4. I (have - has - had) an earache now.
5. What do you (doing - does - do) to stay healthy?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (5Ms)

1. better - I - feel - tomorrow - hope - they'll.
▶ ....

2. you - a - Do - have - toothache?
▶ .... ?

3. like - really - fruit - I.
▶ ....

4. moving - your body - It's - important - keep - to.
▶ ....

5. stomach - Does - hurt - your?
▶ .... ?





1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (222) آخر الكتاب.

1. You should live a/an (unhealthy - healthy - unwell - uncomfortable) life.
2. It is really important to have a balanced (drink - sport - diet - fruit).
3. Getting enough (sleep - exercise - food - sport) at night is very important.
4. You should drink (little - many - plenty - less) of water.

2 Choose the correct answer: (1.5Ms)

1. I fell over in the playground and my arm (treats - heals - hurts - damages).
2. Wash the vegetables before eating them or you will have a (toothache - backache - headache - stomachache).
3. The doctor gives you (medicine - bandage - cream - toothpaste) when you are ill.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

staff - crowded - unwell - relative

In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their ❶ .... relative. This means that the hospital is often very ❷ .... and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the ❸ .... at this hospital do something special. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

Fathi is a baker. He works in a bakery next to our house. It is very hot in the bakery. He sells bread to people after he puts it in bags. His wife Seham is a nurse at Al-Helal Hospital. Her work is to help doctors and look after sick people. All patients love her and she loves them. She always smiles at <u>them</u>. She also looks after her family.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "them" refers to the (patients - doctors - family - people).
2. Fathi sells (fruit - bags - flour - bread).

B Answer these questions:

3. What does a nurse do? ▶ ....
4. Why do patients love Seham? ▶ ....
5. Where does Fathi work? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. food - is - the - Which - popular - most? ▶ .... ?
2. long - have - a - I - very - scarf. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. It's .... (legal) for cars to go when the light is red.
2. My brother .... (have) a sore throat.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (4Ms)

1. it was first used to treat wounds by egyptian doctors ▶ ....
2. you should drink plenty of water ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"A visit you've made to a doctor"

▶ Ideas to help you:
- When did you visit a doctor?
- What did the doctor give you?

....
....
....
....

Term 2



Unit 9

My favorite animal

حيواني المُفضَل

In this unit I will ....

- listen, read, research, and write about animals.
- listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.
- talk about ability now and in the past.
- learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.
- write an email about an unusual animal.
- research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.

Objectives

Vocabulary	**Animals**: kangaroo, panda, bat, lion, penguin, dolphin, snail, parrot, whale, wonderful, wildlife park, pouch, shelter, rest, save, trunk, branch, nut, exhausted, breeze, useless, ungrateful, comfortable
Language	- Can for ability in the present, i.e. I can play basketball. I can't speak Italian. - Could for ability in the past, i.e. I could speak French when I lived in France. - I couldn't take the bus so I had to walk. - The noun suffix -er, i.e. teach – teacher - -ed and -ing adjectives, i.e. I am very interested in history. History is so interesting!
Reading	- Online chat about a day at a wildlife park - Aesop's The travelers and the tree - Email about an unusual animal
Listening	- Words about wildlife
Speaking	- Talking about things you could/couldn't do at different ages
Writing	- Email about an unusual animal
Project	- Infographic about an animal habitat
Phonics	- Correctly pronounce voiced sounds: /v/ (e.g. vase) and /w/ (e.g. winter)
Life skills	**Critical thinking:** Why are trees important?
Values	**Appreciation and gratitude:** Appreciating the small things in life
Issues and challenges	**Environmental responsibility:** Animal habitats
Inegrated cross-cultural topics	**Project:** Infographic about an animal habitat








Lesson 1 Wildlife

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

wildlife park	منتزه الحيوانات البرية	go near	يقترب
pouch	جراب (مكان في بطن الكنغرو)	the cold	الطقس البارد - البرودة
day out	يوم نزهة بالخارج	garden	حديقة
shell	قوقعة - صَدَفَة	upside down	رأسًا علي عقب - مقلوب
ice	ثلج	snow	جليد
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	ocean	محيط
bamboo	بامبو - نبات الخيزران	inside	بالداخل



Unit 9

Adjectives صفات

so sweet	لطيف جدًا	wonderful	رائع
so cool	رائع جدًا	awesome	مُدهش
interesting	ممتع - شيق	amazing	مُذهل
beautiful	جميل	strong	قوي
colorful	ملون - زاهي الألوان	friendly	ودود - محبوب
little	صغير الحجم	special	خاص - مميز

Prepositions حروف الجر

in the dark	في الظلام	in a group	في مجموعة
at night	في الليل	on two legs	على قدمين
with my family	مع عائلتي	at school	في المدرسة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
jump	يقفز	jumped	enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed
look	يبدو	looked	want	يريد - يرغب	wanted
sound	يبدو	sounded	talk	يتحدث	talked
stay	يظل - يبقى	stayed	live	يعيش	lived
repeat	يردد - يكرر	repeated	like	يحب	liked







Lesson 1

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
eat	يأكل	ate	have	يمتلك - يملك	had
see	يرى	saw	do	يفعل	did
say	يقول	said	feed	يُطعم	fed
swim	يسبح	swam	hide	يخفي - يخبئ	hid
sit	يجلس	sat	fly	يطير	flew
sleep	ينام	slept	go	يذهب	went

The Lesson Notes

- لاحظ استخدام كلمة (so) قبل الصفات لتعطي معنى (جدًا very):

so sweet – so beautiful – so cool

- وأيضًا يمكن أن تستخدم قبل الظرف لتعطي نفس المعنى:

▶ They can swim so well.

- لاحظ أن الأفعال (يبدو look) و (يبدو sound) يُتبعا بصفة:

▶ They look so cool.
▶ It sounds amazing.



Read and learn

Wildlife animals
حيوانات البرّيّة



1. I live in the garden. I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. I'm a snail.

.1 أنا أعيش في الحديقة. لديَّ قوقعة. ليس لديَّ أرجل أو أذرع. أنا حلزون.





2. I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. I'm a kangaroo.

2. أنا أعيش في أستراليا. أنا أقفز على ساقين. أنا كنغر.



3. I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. I'm a bat.

3. أنا أطير في الليل. أنا أنام رأسًا على عقب (مقلوبًا) على الأشجار. أنا خفاش.



4. I live on ice and snow. I'm black and white. I can swim, but I can't fly. I'm a penguin

4. أنا أعيش على الثلج والجليد. أنا أبيض وأسود اللون. أنا أستطيع أن أسبح، لكنني لا أستطيع أن أطير. أنا بطريق.



5. I'm a bird. I'm very beautiful and colorful. I live in the rainforest. I'm a parrot.

5. أنا طائر. أنا جميل جدًا وملون. أنا أعيش في الغابة المطيرة. أنا ببغاء.



6. I live in Africa. I'm a very big cat. I'm very strong. I'm a lion.

6. أنا أعيش في أفريقيا. أنا قط كبير جدًا. أنا قوي جدًا. أنا أسد.



7. I'm very friendly. I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. I'm a dolphin.

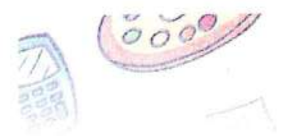
7. أنا ودود جدًا. أنا أسبح في مجموعة مع عائلتي في المحيط. أنا دولفين.



8. I live in China. I eat bamboo. I'm big, and black and white. I'm a panda.

8. أنا أعيش فى الصين. أنا آكل نبات الخيزران (البامبو). أنا ضخم، ولوني أبيض وأسود. أنا الباندا.









Where did Ramez go yesterday? أين ذهب رامز بالأمس؟



Ramez: Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.


رامز: أهلًا! لقد قضيت يومًا رائعًا بالأمس مع عائلتي.



Ayman: Where did you go?


أيمن: أين ذهبت؟



Ramez: I went to the new wildlife park - it was awesome!


رامز: ذهبت إلى منتزه الحيوانات البرية الجديد، لقد كان مدهشًا!

Ayman: What did you see? Could you go near the lions?


أيمن: ماذا رأيت؟ هل تمكنت من الاقتراب من الأسود؟

Ramez: No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch - it's so sweet!


رامز: لا، لقد بقينا داخل السيارة، ولكن استطعنا رؤيتهم من بين الأشجار. كانت الكناغر مثيرة للاهتمام أيضًا. عندما تكون الكناغر في عُمْرٍ صغيرة، فإنه يكون بإمكانها الجلوس داخل جراب أمهاتها – إنه شيء لطيف للغاية!

Ayman: What birds did you see?


أيمن: وما الطيور التي رأيتها؟

Ramez: Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!


رامز: الكثير منها، لكن الببغاوات كانت المفضلة لديّ. كانت جميلة جدًا وبإمكانها التحدث! قلنا لها بعض الكلمات لكي تكررها.

Ayman: What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?


أيمن: ماذا عن الحيوانات التي تحب الطقس البارد؟ هل رأيت أيًا منها؟





Ramez: Yes, penguins! They were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. We fed them some fish! I love penguins - they can swim so well and they look so cool!

رامز: نعم، البطاريق! لقد كانوا في مكان خاص بالداخل. وكان باردًا كالثلاجة. قمنا بإطعامها بعض السمك. أنا أحب البطاريق، حيث أن بإمكانها السباحة بشكل جيد جدًا ومظهرها لطيف للغاية!

Ayman: Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?

أيمن: واو! هل كان هناك شيئًا ما أردت رؤيته ولم تستطع؟

Ramez: The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark!

رامز: الخفافيش. أنا اقوم بعمل مشروع عن الخفافيش في المدرسة، وأردت رؤيتها بشدة! لكن كانت جميعها مختبئة ولم أستطع رؤيتها في الظلام!

Ayman: Oh well, it sounds amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now - that's the most wildlife I'll see today!

أيمن: آه، حسنًا، هذا مذهل! يجب عليّ الذهاب لإطعام أرنبي الآن، هذا أقصى ما سأراه من الحياة البرية اليوم!

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Flamingos eat with their heads upside down. They use their tongue to catch their food.

طيور الفلامنجو تأكل ورؤوسها مقلوبة. وتستخدم ألسنتها لالتقاط طعامها.







Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Complete the summary of the text with the words in the box:

Student's Book

project - sad - parrots - park - enjoyed - lions

Yesterday, Ramez went to a wildlife ❶ .... with his family. He ❷ .... it very much. They saw lots of different animals like ❸ .... , kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the ❹ .... He was a bit ❺ .... because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a ❻ .... on them at school.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wildlife – pouch – park – kangaroos

I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family. I went to the new ❶ .... park – it was awesome! The ❷ .... were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's ❸ .... – it's so sweet!

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. A (kamgroo - bat - snail - parrot) lives in the garden. It has a shell. It doesn't have legs or arms.
2. A (dolphin - snail - lion - kangaroo) lives in Australia. It jumps on two legs.
3. It flies at night. It sleeps upside down on trees. It is the (penguin - panda - fish - bat).
4. It lives in Africa. It's a very big cat. It is very strong. It is the (fox - zebra - monkey - lion).



5. It's a bird. It's very beautiful and colorful. It lives in the rainforest. It's the (penguin - frog - parrot - bat).
6. A (parrot - bat - zebra - penguin) lives on ice and snow. It's black and white. It can swim, but it can't fly.
7. It is very friendly. It swims in a group with its family in the ocean. It's the (kangaroo - parrot - shark - dolphin).
8. A (panda - snail - parrot - bat) lives in China. It eats bamboo. It's big, and black and white.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ramez went to the new wildlife park yesterday. It was awesome! He saw so many animals. He couldn't go near the lions. He stayed in the car. But he could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch - it's so sweet!

He saw lots of birds, but his favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! He couldn't see the bats. They were all hiding and he couldn't see them in the dark!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Ramez didn't go near the (lions - rats - bats - kangaroos).
2. The opposite of the underlined word "dark" is (morning - sun - light - evening).

B Answer these questions:

3. What are Ramez's favorite birds?

▶ ....

4. Why couldn't he see the bats?

▶ ....



5. Summarize the text in two sentences.

▶ ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Where did Ramez .... (went) yesterday?
2. Could you .... (going) near the lions?
3. Penguins can .... (swims) so well and they look so cool!
4. I'm .... (do) a project on bats at school.
5. Yesterday, Ramez .... (go) to a wildlife park with his family.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. can – so – They – swim – well.

   ▶ ....

2. see – birds – What – you – did?

   ▶ .... ?

3. kangaroos – interesting – The – were.

   ▶ ....

4. did – yesterday – Where – Ramez – go?

   ▶ .... ?

5. went – park – to – I – the.

   ▶ ....

6. project – bats – I'm – a – doing - on.

   ▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. where did ramez go last tuesday

   ▶ ....

2. the kangaroo lives in australia

   ▶ ....



3. did ayman go with him to the park

▶ ....

4. no he couldn't see the bats

▶ ....

5. lions live in africa but pandas live in china

▶ ....

8 **Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

"My favorite animal"

▶ Ideas to help you: - What is it? - Where does it live?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....




Lesson 2 What could you do?

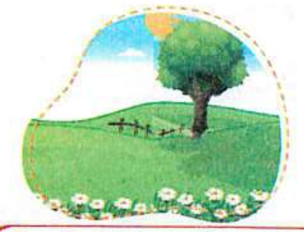
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



trunk
جذع الشجرة



branch
فرع - غصن



shelter
مأوى - ملجأ - ملاذ



rest (n)
استراحة



exhausted
مُنهَك



nuts
مكسرات



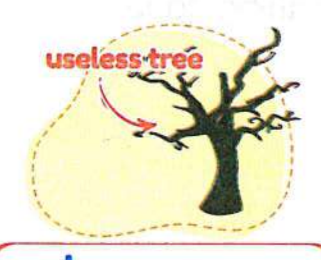
meeting point
نقطة التقاء



travelers
مسافرون



cool breeze
نسيم بارد



useless
عديم النفع



ungrateful
غير ممتن



comfortable
مريح





Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

traders	تجار	fable	حكاية - خرافة
humans	بشر	give value	يعطي قيمة
shade (n)	ظِل	wide	عريض - واسع
dry land	أرض جافة	tired	مُتعَب - مُجهَد
rainy day	يوم مطير	unkind	فظّ - قاسٍ
lives (sing. life)	حيوات	at the end	في النهاية

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

That's a very good idea.	هذه فكرة جيدة جدًا.
fell asleep	يغفو - ينام فجأة
the branches of the tree	فروع الشجرة
the trunk of the tree	جذع الشجرة
It's keeping us cool.	إنها تحافظ على برودة أجسامنا.

Vocabulary Study SB Student's Book

breeze	: a little wind
useless	: we can't use it
ungrateful	: don't thank others for doing something good
comfortable	: it's nice to sit on or wear
unfriendly	: not kind to someone
meeting point	: is somewhere where people meet

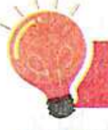
Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
play	يلعب - يعزف	played	rest	يستريح	rested
help	يساعد	helped	move	يتحرك	moved
walk	يمشي	walked	save	يحفظ - ينقذ	saved
plant	يزرع	planted	use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
speak	يتحدث	spoke	run	يجري	ran
come	يأتي	came	meet	يقابل	met
drink	يشرب	drank	feel	يشعر - يحس	felt
give	يعطي	gave	take	يأخذ	took
wake	يستيقظ	woke	hear	يسمع	heard
drive	يقود سيارة	drove	fall asleep	ينام فجأة	fell asleep
read	يقرأ	read	leave	يغادر	left



Read and learn

An additional piece of information معلومة إضافية

Aesop was an Ancient Greek fabulist or storyteller credited with a number of fables now collectively known as Aesop's Fables. He wrote so many fables featuring animals that behave and speak as human beings, told in order to satirize human failings, follies and weaknesses.

إيسوب هو مؤلف حكايات خرافية وروائي في اليونان القديمة، وله مجموعة من الحكايات الخرافية معروفة باسم خرافات إيسوب. لقد كتب حكايات خرافية كثيرة جدًا تحكي عن حيوانات تتصرف وتتكلم كالبشر، وذلك للسخرية من إخفاقات وحماقات وضعف البشر.



A fable by Aesop. Why was the tree angry?
حكاية من خرافات إيسوب. لماذا غضبت الشجرة؟

The travelers and the tree المسافرون والشجرة

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.

ذات مرة كان يوجد شجرة ضخمة قديمة في أرض جافة حارة. لقد عاشت تلك الشجرة لسنوات عديدة. كان جذعها عريض جدًا ولها العديد من الغصون الخضراء. وكانت تلك الشجرة مشهورة لكونها الشجرة الوحيدة في تلك الأرض، ووفرت المأوى والراحة لمئات المسافرين الذين كانوا يتنقلون في البلد. حيث كانت قريبة من أربع مدن والكثير من القرى في منطقتها، وكانت نقطة التقاء للتجار.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.

وذات يوم كان هناك مسافران، وكانا جديدين في المنطقة، يمشيان في تلك المنطقة ورأيا الشجرة. كان ذلك اليوم شديد الحرارة والجفاف، فقال أحدهما: "لنتوقف تحت تلك الشجرة، حيث يوجد بعض الظل." قال صديقه: "هذه فكرة جيدة جدًا." واستراح الرجلان تحت الشجرة وشربا بعض الماء، ثم استمتعا بالظل والنسيم البارد. ولأنهما كانا مُتْعَبَيْن جدًا، سرعان ما غفوا في النوم.

When they woke up, one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no nuts or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

وعندما استيقظا، شعر أحدهما بالجوع، ولم يكن أيًا منهما يمتلك أي طعام في حقائبهما، لذا نظرا لأعلى إلى أغصان الشجرة. قال أحدهما: "هذه الشجرة عديمة الجدوى، فليس بها طعام لنا. ليس بها جوز ولا فواكه في غصونها." فقال الآخر: "لكن لها ظلّ حافظ على برودة أجسامنا."





But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so ungrateful?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here." The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry.

سمعت الشجرة كلمات المسافر الأول وغضبت. قالت: "كيف يمكن أن تكون شديد الجحود هكذا؟ لقد أتيتني وانت تشعر بالحر والتعب، فمنحتك مكانًا باردًا ومريحًا كي تنام، وعلى الأرجح أنقذت حياتك. انظر، ليس بالجوار أي مكان بارد تستطيع النوم فيه." نظر المسافران حولهما وأدركا أن الشجرة على حق، وشعرا بالأسف الشديد.





Ability / Inability
القدرة (الاستطاعة) / عدم القدرة (العجز)

can يستطيع - can't لا يستطيع

- **When we talk about something we are or aren't able to do in the present, we use can or can't.**
- نعبر عن الاستطاعة أو عدم الاستطاعة في المضارع باستخدام (can – can't).

▶ I can play basketball. ▶ I can't speak Italian.

- **To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with Can).**
- لعمل الاسئلة نغير ترتيب الكلمات لكي نبدأ ب (Can).

▶ Can you read and write English? ↳ Yes, I can.
▶ Can you fly? ↳ No, I can't.

could كان يستطيع - couldn't لم يكن يستطيع

- **When we talk about something we were or were not able to do in the past, we use could or couldn't:**
- نعبر عن الاستطاعة أو عدم الاستطاعة في الماضي باستخدام (could – couldn't).

▶ I could speak French when I lived in France.
▶ I couldn't take the bus, so I had to walk.



■ **To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with Could).**

■ لعمل الأسئلة نغير ترتيب الكلمات لكي نبدأ ب (Could).

- Could you ride a bike when you were three? ↳ Yes, I could.
- Could you send emails when you were four? ↳ No, I couldn't.

Note that: لاحظ أن:

(can - can't - could - couldn't) must be followed by the infinitive without to.

(can – can't – could – couldn't) لا بد أن يتبعوا بمصدر الفعل بدون (to).

المصدر هو التصريف الأول للفعل بدون أي إضافات.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

travelers – trunk – branches – shelter

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its ❶ .... was very wide and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave ❷ .... and rest to hundreds of ❸ .... as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

field - travelers - breeze - shade

One day, two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the ❶ .... and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day. They stopped under that tree, where there's some ❷ .... They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool ❸ .... As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.



3 Choose the correct answer:

Student's Book

1. A breeze is a little (wind - lake).
2. When something is useless, we (can - can't) use it.
3. When someone is ungrateful, they (thank - don't thank) others for doing something good.
4. When something is comfortable, it's (nice - not nice) to sit on or wear.
5. A meeting point is somewhere where people (leave - meet).

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. I (can - can't - should - could) ride a horse. It's easy.
2. (Can - Couldn't - Can't - Could) you go near the lions when you were in the wildlife park?
3. When kangaroos are little, they (could - couldn't - mustn't - can) sit inside their mom's pouch.
4. She (can - should - could - couldn't) go to school early yesterday. She was late.
5. Penguins (can't - shouldn't - can - could) swim very well. They like water.
6. I wanted to see the bats, but I (can't - should - could - couldn't).
7. (Can - Could - Should - Couldn't) you make basbousa? - No, I can't.
8. I (can't - could - should - couldn't) write good paragraphs last year, but now I can.
9. I (can - should - can't - could) drive a bus. It's so big and hard to control.
10. She (could - can - shouldn't - can't) see the Eiffel Tower when she went to France.
11. (Can - Will - Can't - Could) he get the full mark? - Yes, he could.
12. Can he (come - comes - coming - came) with us?
13. She couldn't (go - goes - went) to work yesterday.
14. I can't (bought - buys - buying - buy) that expensive bike.
15. Could Maged (played - playing - play - plays) the match yesterday?



16. I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I (couldn't - can - can't - could). SB

17. Last year, he (shouldn't - can't - could - couldn't) run very quickly, but now he can. SB

18. (Can - Shouldn't - Could - Can't) you play the piano when you were a child? SB

19. Sorry, I (can - can't - should - could) help you with your homework. I'm busy. SB

20. Can he walk to his office? – No, he (can - should - couldn't - can't).

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I can .... (played) basketball.
2. When I was two, I .... (can't) use a computer.
3. Snails can't .... (moves) quickly.
4. .... (Can) you ride a bike when you were three?
5. I couldn't .... (reading) when I was one.
6. Ostriches can run very fast, but they .... (can) fly.
7. Could you .... (spoke) English when you were five?
8. My cousin .... (can) run when he was a baby.
9. She .... (could) speak two languages now. She's clever.
10. I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I .... (can't).

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. play - can - basketball - I. ▶ ....
2. tennis - you - Can - play? ▶ .... ?
3. Italian - I - speak - can't ▶ ....
4. tired - travelers - The - very - were. ▶ ....
5. trees - important - is - Why - it - to plant? ▶ .... ?
6. was - hot - It - day - a very. ▶ ....
7. angry - Why - tree - was - the? ▶ .... ?



Lesson 3 This is so interesting!

GRAMMAR STUDY

Adjectives with (-ed) or (-ing)

'e can add (-ed) or (-ing) to a verb to make an adjective. If the erb ends in -e, we take off the -e and add -ed or -ing.

✦ يمكننا إضافة (-ed) أو (-ing) للفعل لنحصل علي الصفة. إذا انتهي الفعل ب (-e) نحذف (-e) ونضيف (-ed) أو (-ing).

✦ الصفة المنتهية بـ (-ed) تصف كيف يشعر الشخص (في الغالب تستخدم لوصف عاقل).

- I am very interested in history.
- I was so bored in that movie.

✦ الصفة المنتهية بـ (-ing) تصف الشيء الذي جعل الشخص يشعر بهذا (في الغالب تستخدم لوصف غير العاقل).

- History is so interesting!
- That movie was so boring.

■ **It's important to understand the difference between (-ed) and (-ing) adjectives:**

✦ من المهم أن نفهم الفرق بين الصفات التي تنتهي ب (-ed) و (-ing)

- In the first sentence, bored describes how I felt about the movie.
- In the third sentence, boring describes what the movie was like.
- In the second sentence, interested describes how I feel about history.
- In the fourth sentence, interesting describes what history is like.

verb		"-ed" adjectives		"-ing" adjectives	
annoy	يضايق	annoyed	متضايق	annoying	مُزعج
interest	يجذب اهتمام	interested	مهتم	interesting	شيق - ممتع
amaze	يدهش	amazed	مندهش	amazing	مدهش
tire	يتعب	tired	مُتعَب	tiring	مُتعِب
surprise	يفاجئ	surprised	متفاجئ	surprising	مفاجئ
bore	يضجر - يسأم - يمل	bored	شاعر بالملل	boring	ممل

The suffix (-er) اللاحقة (-er)

We can add **-er** to the end of words to make a noun. This is a suffix.

إضافة (-er) في نهاية الكلمات لنحصل علي الاسم، وهذا يسمي لاحقة.

We take the verb, e.g. **teach**, and add **-er** to make the person, e.g. teacher.

Root word أصل الكلمة		Person الاسم	
teach	يُدَرِّس	teacher	مُدرس
read	يقرأ	reader	قارئ
climb	يتسلق	climber	متسلق

Root word أصل الكلمة		Person الاسم	
travel	يسافر	traveler	
farm	يزرع - مزرعة	farmer	
football	كرة قدم	footballer	كرة قدم

Pronunciation: the /v/ and /w/ sounds

/v/ and /w/ are both voiced sounds. This means that if you place your hand on your throat, you can feel the vibration when you say them.

/v/ و /w/ كلاهما أصوات منطوقة. هذا يعني أنه إذا وضعت يدك علي حلقك، سوف تشعر بالاهتزاز عندما تنطقهما.

How to make the /v/ sound:

كيفية نطق الصوت /v/:

- To pronounce /v/, press your top teeth against your bottom lip.

  لكي تنطق الصوت /v/ ضع أسنانك العلوية على شفتك السفلية.

vet ▶▶▶ **vase** ▶▶▶ **violin** ▶▶▶ **volcano**

How to make the /w/ sound:

كيفية نطق الصوت /w/:

- To pronounce /w/, make a tight circle with your lips.

  لكي تنطق الصوت /w/ قم بعمل دائرة ضيقة بشفتيك.

winter ▶▶▶ **wet** ▶▶▶ **wheel** ▶▶▶ **water**



/v/		/w/	
vase	مزهرية	water	ماء
vest	صديري	watermelon	ثمرة البطيخ
vet	طبيب بيطري	west	غرب
violin	آلة الكمان	wet	مبتل
volcano	بركان	whale	حوت
		wheel	عجلة
		winter	فصل الشتاء

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

professional	محترف	afloat	طافٍ - عائم
famous	مشهور	history	تاريخ
clear	واضح	tongue	لسان

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
climb	يتسلق	climbed
travel	يسافر	traveled
plant	يزرع	planted
relax	يسترخي	relaxed

Present		Past
wait	ينتظر	waited
turn over	ينقلب	turned over
decide	يقرر	decided
describe	يصف	described



Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
teach	يُدَرِّس	taught	hear	يسمع	heard
feel	يشعر - يحس	felt	wear	يرتدي	wore
find	يجد	found	ring	يرن	rang





Last Wednesday, I decided to travel west in my boat, wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano, but I had some problems. I met some whales and they turned over my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate watermelon to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my village!

يوم الأربعاء الماضي، قررت الإبحار غربًا بقاربي، مرتديًا سترتي. كنت أبحث عن بركان ولكن واجهتني بعض المشكلات. لقد قابلتُ بعض الحيتان وقلبوا قاربي، وكنت مظطرًا إلى أن أجلس على آلة الكمان الخاصة بي حتى حتى أظل طافيًا! أكلت ثمرة بطيخ حتى أبقى بصحة جيدة ووصلت إلى شاطئ. لم أجد البركان، ولكنني تقابلت مع بعض الأطباء البيطريين وأعادوني إلى قريتي.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



whales - village - west - Wednesday - vest - watermelon

Last ① ...., I decided to travel ② .... in my boat, wearing my ③ .... I was looking for a volcano but I had some problems. I met some ④ .... and they turned over my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate ⑤ .... to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my ⑥ ....!

2 Choose the correct answer: The suffix (-er)

1. She's a good (read - reader). She reads so many books.
2. He can't (climb - climber) that tree.
3. He is a bad (climb - climber).
4. She goes to the library to (read - reader) stories.
5. My grandpa is a great (travel - traveler).
6. My grandpa (travels - traveler) a lot.
7. They are (farm - farmers).
8. They work on a (farm - farmers).

3 Choose the correct answer: Adjectives with (-ed) or (-ing)

1. She's (annoy - annoyed - annoying) and she wants to leave the place.
2. The music she's hearing is (annoy - annoyed - annoying).
3. The view from the balcony is (amaze - amazed - amazing).
4. He was (amazed - amazing - amaze) when he saw the view.
5. I'm very (tired - tire - tiring).
6. The math homework was (tiring - tire - tired).
7. She was (surprising - surprise - surprised).
8. The party was (surprise - surprised - surprising).

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. That movie was so .... (bored).
2. I was so .... (boring) with that movie.
3. I am very .... (interesting) in history.
4. History is so .... (interested)!



5. I find my phone really .... (annoyed) when it rings while I'm sleeping.

6. That long walk was very .... (tired).

7. Last Wednesday, I .... (decide) to travel west in my boat.

8. I didn't .... (finds) the volcano.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. friendly - classroom - very - She's - in.

 ▶ ....

2. movie - so - was - That - boring.

 ▶ ....

3. many - traveled - places - He - to.

 ▶ ....

4. read - books - twenty - about - He.

 ▶ ....

5. can't - to - get - wait - I - home.

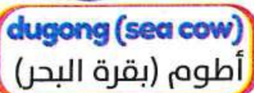
 ▶ ....

Lessons 4 5 Writing & Project



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

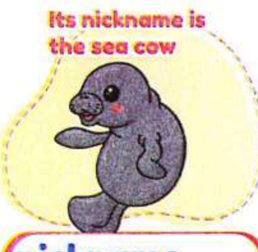




dugong (sea cow)
أطوم (بقرة البحر)



sea bed
قاع البحر



nickname
لقب - كنية



infographic
عرض بياني للمعلومات



habitat
موطن طبيعي



desert
صحراء



forest
غابة



grassland
أرض عشبية

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

polar	قطبي	bison	بيسون (نوع بقر بري)
opinion	رأي	wolves (sing. wolf)	ذئاب
research (n)	بحث	eagle	نسر
heading	عنوان	ostrich	نعامة
unusual	غير معتاد - غريب	lovely	محبوب
favorite	مفضل	friendly	ودود
photo	صورة	grass	حشائش - عُشب

Sentences & Expression جمل وتعبيرات

Just a quick note.	ملاحظة سريعة فقط.
Thanks for writing to me.	أشكرك على مراسلتي.
How is life?	كيف الأحوال؟
How are things?	كيف تسير الأمور معك؟
How are you?	كيف حالك؟
Write soon.	اكتب لي قريبًا.
Hope to hear from you soon.	أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريبًا.
See you soon.	أراك قريبًا.
All the best.	أطيب التمنيات.
Bye for now.	وداعًا حاليًا.
once a week	مرة في الأسبوع
around the world	حول العالم

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
mention	يُنوه - يَذكر	mentioned	expand	يتوسع / يتمدد	expanded
display	يعرض	displayed	check	يراجع - يفحص	checked
end	ينهي	ended	ask	يسأل - يطلب	asked
hope	يتمنى	hoped	try	يحاول	tried
call	يتصل	called	talk	يتكلم	talked
discuss	يناقش	discussed	decide	يقرر	decided



Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
think	يفكر	thought	spend (time)	يقضي وقت	spent (time)
send	يرسل	sent	choose	يختار	chose
see	يرى	saw	know	يعرف	knew
say	يقول	said	write	يكتب	wrote
make	يصنع	made	run	يجري	ran



Read Amir's email. اقرأ إيميل أمير.
What's his favorite unusual animal? ما هو الحيوان غير الاعتيادي المفضل لديه؟



From: Amir
To: Tamer
Subject: Unusual animals

Dear Tamer,

Thanks for your email. How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball, and I play on a team once a week.

This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt.

My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong – can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal? Write back and let me know.

Hope to hear from you soon!

Amir



من: أمير
إلى: تامر
الموضوع: حيوانات غير اعتيادية
عزيزي تامر،
شكرًا على رسالتك. كيف الأحوال؟ كانت معرفة رياضاتك المفضلة شيئًا مثيرًا للاهتمام. أنا أحب كرة السلة، وألعب مع فريقٍ مرة أسبوعيًا.
تحدثنا كثيرا في المدرسة هذا الأسبوع عن الحيوانات غير الاعتيادية، ورأينا صور حيوانات حول العالم، وبعضها من مصر. الحيوان غير الاعتيادي المفضل لديّ من مصر هو الأطوم، هل تستطيع رؤيته في الصورة؟ أرى أن وجهه محبب وودود، إنه لطيف جدًا!! إن لقبه هو "بقرة البحر"، ويقضي العديد من الساعات يوميا في أكل النباتات في قاع البحر.
ماذا عنك؟ ما هو الحيوان غير الاعتيادي المفضل لديك؟ سأنتظر ردك لأعرفه.
أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريبًا!
أمير

Tip! Writing an email — كتابة البريد الإلكتروني

1. Begin your email with *Dear* or *Hi* and the person's name.

.1 ابدأ بريدك الإلكتروني بـ (Dear - Hi) ثم اسم الشخص.

2. Say why you are writing. Use phrases like *I'm writing to tell you that* ..... *Just a quick note* and *Thanks for writing to me.*

.2 اذكر سبب كتابة البريد الإلكتروني. استخدم عبارات مثل:
(I'm writing to tell you that..... Just a quick note – Thanks for writing to me).

3. Give one idea in a paragraph and expand on it – look how Amir mentions the dugong, then describes it.

.3 قدم فكرة واحدة في كل فقرة ثم قم بتفصيل الفكرة – انظر كيف ذكر أمير حيوان الأطوم ثم بدأ بوصفه.

4. When writing to a friend, you can use informal language, e.g. words like *awesome* and *cool*, contractions like *I'm,* and phrases like *How's life?* and *How are things?*

.4 عندما تكتب لصديق يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية مثل (cool - awesome).
واختصارات مثل (I'm) وعبارات مثل (How are things? - How is life?).

5. End your email with phrases like *Write soon, Hope to hear from you soon, See you soon, All the best,* or *Bye for now,* and then your name.

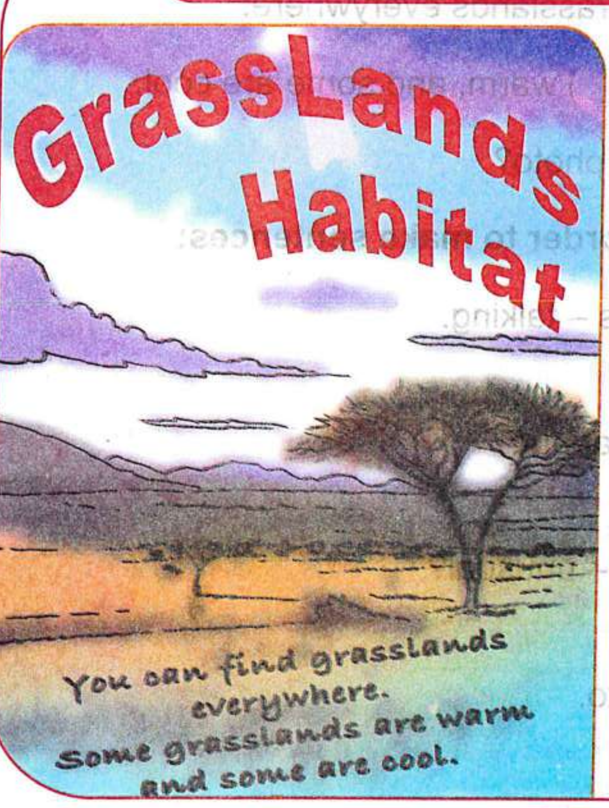
.5 أنهِ بريدك الإلكتروني بعبارات مثل (Hope to hear from you - Write soon - See you soon - All the best - Bye for now) ثم اسمك.

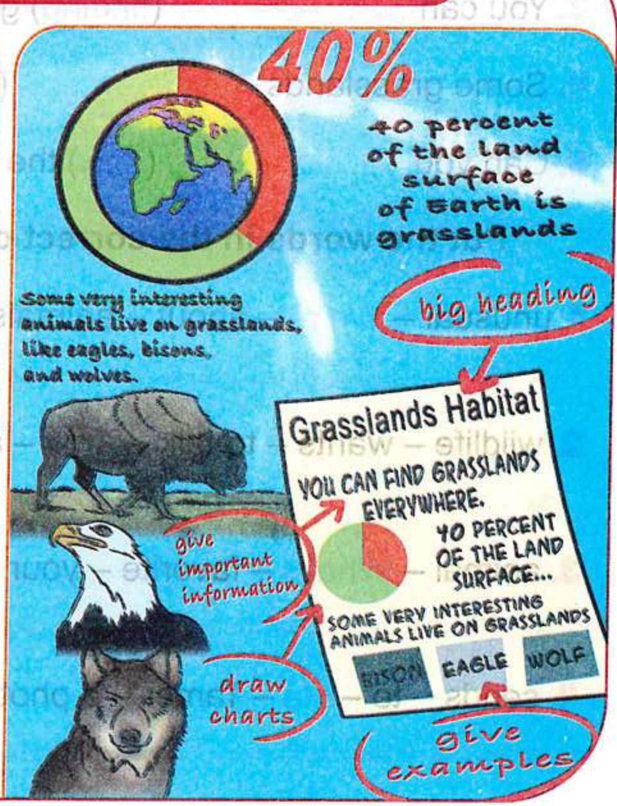
Project

Make your infographic.

قم بتصميم العرض البياني للمعلومات (الانفوجرافك) الخاص بك.

GrassLands Habitat موطن المراعي العشبية





Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

nickname - sea - dugong - cow

My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong – can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its ❶ .... is the sea ❷ .... and it spends many hours eating grass from the ❸ .... bed every day.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What .... (are) your favorite unusual animal?
2. I .... (loves) basketball, and I play on a team once a week.
3. You can .... (finding) grasslands everywhere.
4. Some grasslands .... (is) warm, and some are cool.
5. Can you .... (saw) the photo?

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. unusual – We're – about – animals – talking.

▶ ....

2. wildlife – wants – to talk – Amir – about.

▶ ....

3. animal – What's – favorite – your – unusual?

▶ .... ?

4. sends – to – He – Tamer – a photo.

▶ ....

5. back – wants – Tamer – He – write – to.

▶ ....

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. my favorite unusual animal from egypt is the dugong

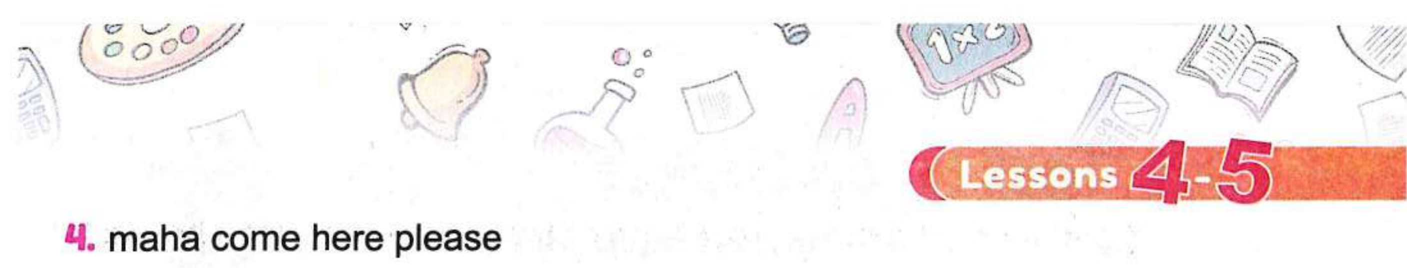
▶ ....

2. can you see the photo of aunt amira

▶ ....

3. the two friends tamer and amir are talking about unusual animals

▶ ....



4. maha come here please

▶ ....

5. my favorite sports are tennis swimming cycling and football

▶ ....

5 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"An unusual animal"

Ideas to help you:
- What does this animal look like?
- Where does it live?

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Test 5 on Unit 9

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Total 30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4.5Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (223) آخر الكتاب.

1. I went to the new wildlife (zoo - park - garden) last week.
2. I saw the panda, the lion, the (kangaroo - elephant - tiger) and the parrot.
3. I'm doing a project on (lions - pandas - bats) at school.

2 Read and complete the dialogue: (8Ms)

parrots - kangaroos - wonderful - wildlife

Ramez : Hi! I had a ❶ .... day out yesterday with my family.

Ayman : Where did you go?

Ramez : I went to the new ❷ .... park – it was awesome!

Ayman : What did you see?

Ramez : I saw the ❸ .... and the lions.

Ayman : What birds did you see?

Ramez : I saw the ❹ ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions: (7.5Ms)

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.



A Answer these questions:

1. Why was the tree famous?

▶ ....

2. How long had it lived?

▶ ....

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The very big old tree was in a hot, (wet - dry - lake) land.
4. Its (trunk - branch - leaf) was very wide.
5. The tree was a meeting point for (travelers - villagers - traders).

4 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. Amr is an excellent (doctor - farmer - teacher). He plants the best tomatoes in town!
2. Kangaroos (can - can't - couldn't) jump very high.
3. (Pandas - Parrots - Bats) eat bamboo. They can't fly.
4. (Can - Were - Could) you play the piano when you were a child?
5. My cat was sick, so I went to the (officer - vet - footballer).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (5Ms)

1. you - Can - tennis - play?

▶ .... ?

2. excellent - is - an - Mr Ashraf - teacher.

▶ ....

3. animal - What's - favorite - your?

▶ .... ?

4. a great - was - My grandfather - traveler.

▶ ....

5. trees - are - Why - for animals - important?

▶ .... ?

Term 2





1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (223) آخر الكتاب.

1. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the (bat - dugong - snail - dolphin).
2. The dugong has got a lovely (sad - bad - mad - friendly) face.
3. Its nickname is the sea (cow - dog - cat - donkey).
4. It spends many hours eating (trees - grass - flowers - seeds) from the sea bed.

2 Choose the correct answer: (1.5Ms)

1. The (bats - snails - penguins - parrots) are amazing birds. They can swim so well.
2. Yesterday, Ramy went to a (garden - school - playground - wildlife) park with his family. They saw lots of different animals.
3. This pen is (useless - useful - comfortable - grateful). I don't want it.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

shade – exhausted – tree – rested

Two travelers were walking across a field and saw a tree. It was a very hot, dry day. They stopped under that tree, where there's some ❶ .... They ❷ .... under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were ❸ ...., they soon fell asleep.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

Last Thursday, my school made a trip to the zoo. We went on the school bus. There were a lot of people at the zoo. We saw some dangerous animals such as lions and tigers. Also, we saw some birds kept in cages such as pigeons, parrots, falcons and eagles. At last, we entered the reptile house. There, we saw snakes, crocodiles, tortoises and some lizards. We were very happy. We returned home in the evening.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "There" refers to the (cages - zoo - reptile house - school bus).

2. Tigers are (cute - nice - small - dangerous) animals.

B Answer these questions:

3. How did they go to the zoo? ▶ ....
4. What birds did they see? ▶ ....
5. Give a suitable title to the text. ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. a meeting - traders - for - The tree - point - was. ▶ ....
2. sit in - Baby - pouch - mom's - kangaroos - their. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. Snails can .... (lived) in shells.
2. Omar .... (couldn't) read stories when he was seven. He really loves reading!

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (4Ms)

1. on Friday I play football with my friend omar ▶ ....
2. last thursday, my school made a trip to the zoo. ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"Planting trees"

▶ **Ideas to help you:** Why is it important to plant trees?
Why are trees important for humans?

....
....
....

Term 2



Test 7 on Units 7 8 9

Total
30

Review



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (223) آخر الكتاب.

1. Amir went to the new wildlife (hospital - park - garden - school) yesterday.
2. Amir couldn't go near the (elephants - lions - tigers - dolphins).
3. When they are little, the (parrots - kangaroos - monkeys - lions) can sit inside their mom's pouch.
4. Amir's favorite (animals - birds - flowers - plants) were the parrots.

2 Choose the correct answer: (1.5Ms)

1. The River Nile has (two - three - four - five) banks.
2. The (parrot - penguin - bat - duck) sleeps upside down on trees.
3. You should see a doctor when you feel (unsafe - unwell - unhappy - fit).

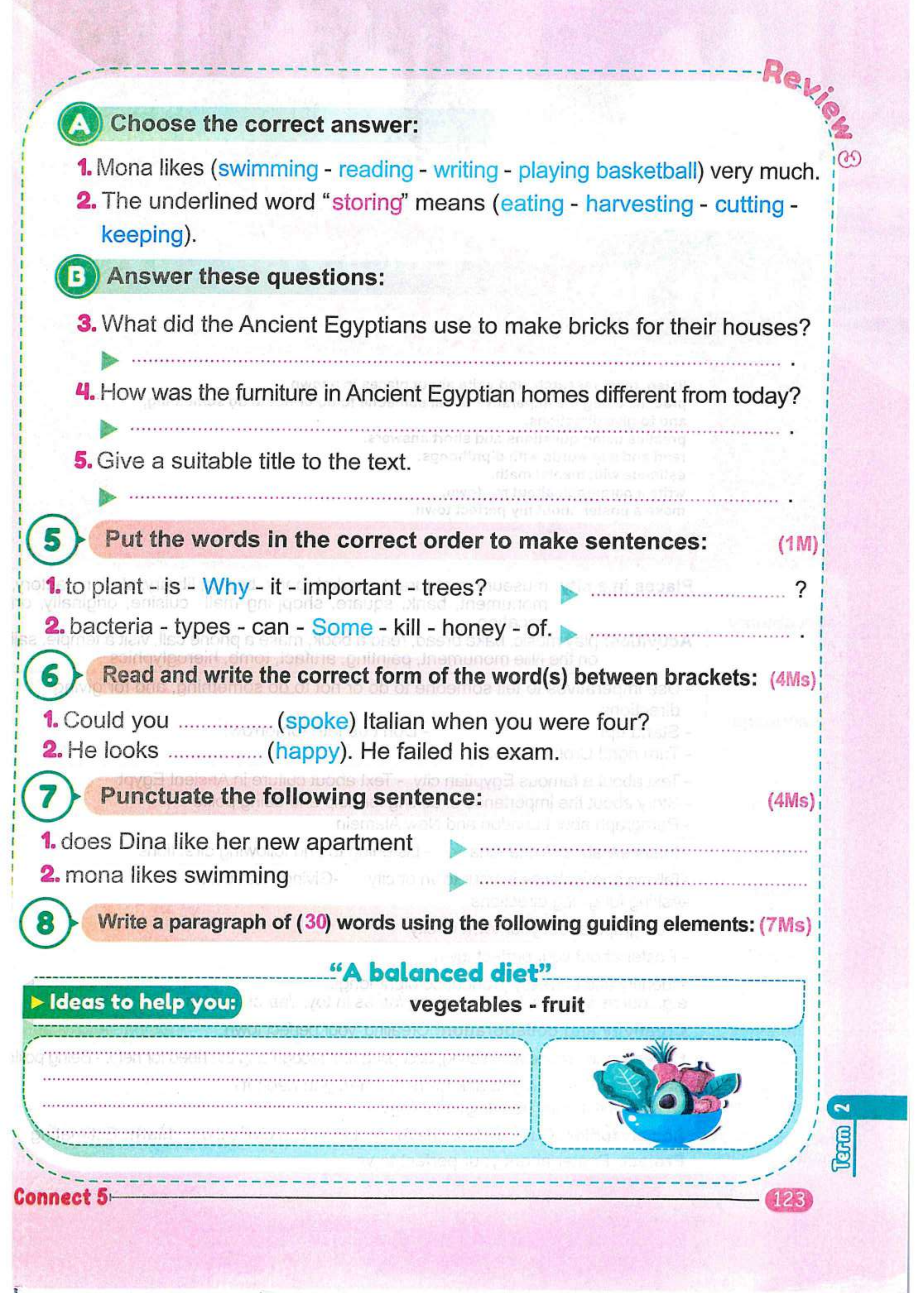
3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

watermelon - whales - Wednesday - vest

Last Wednesday, I decided to travel west in my boat, wearing my ❶ .... I was looking for a volcano, but I had some problems. I met some ❷ .... and they turned over my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate ❸ .... to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my village!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

Hi, my name is Mona. I like reading very much. I read an article about Ancient Egyptian homes yesterday. In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs. That was really interesting!



A Choose the correct answer:

1. Mona likes (swimming - reading - writing - playing basketball) very much.
2. The underlined word "storing" means (eating - harvesting - cutting - keeping).

B Answer these questions:

3. What did the Ancient Egyptians use to make bricks for their houses?
▶ ....
4. How was the furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes different from today?
▶ ....
5. Give a suitable title to the text.
▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. to plant - is - Why - it - important - trees? ▶ .... ?
2. bacteria - types - can - Some - kill - honey - of. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. Could you .... (spoke) Italian when you were four?
2. He looks .... (happy). He failed his exam.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (4Ms)

1. does Dina like her new apartment ▶ ....
2. mona likes swimming ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"A balanced diet"

▶ Ideas to help you: vegetables - fruit

....
....
....
....



Theme (4)
Being responsible

Unit 10

Let's visit Egypt
هيا نزور مصر

In this unit I will ....
- listen, read, research, and write about places in a town.
- practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something, and to give directions.
- practice using questions and short answers.
- read and say words with diphthongs.
- estimate with mental math.
- write a paragraph about my town.
- make a poster about my perfect town.

Objectives

Vocabulary	**Places in a city:** museum, restaurant, market, bank, beach, library, station, factory, monument, bank, square, shopping mall cuisine, originally, on vacation **Activities:** play music, bake bread, read a book, make a phone call, visit a temple, sail on the Nile monument, painting, artifact, tomb, hieroglyphics
Language	- Use imperatives to tell someone to do or not to do something, and for giving directions: - Stand up! - Don't be late tomorrow! - Turn right! Cross the road.
Reading	- Text about a famous Egyptian city - Text about culture in Ancient Egypt - Story about the importance of asking for help and being polite - Paragraph about London and New Alamein
Listening	- Interview about Alexandria - Listening to and following directions
Speaking	-Talking about places in your town or city -Giving instructions -Asking for giving directions
Writing	- Paragraph about your town or city
Project	- Poster about your perfect town
Phonics	- Identify and correctly pronounce diphthongs, e.g. /oʊ/ as in show, /eɪ/ as in eight, /ɔɪ/ as in toy, /aɪ/ as in right.
Life skills	**Creativity and collaboration:** Creating 'your perfect town'
Values	**Honesty and kindness:** Offering, accepting and recognizing the need for help. - Being polite
Issues and challenges	**Self-reflection:** Do you ask for help when you need it? Why is asking for help a good thing?
Inegrated cross-cultural topics	**Social studies:** Cultural life in the Ancient Egyptian civilization **Math:** Estimating **Project:** Poster about your perfect town





Lesson 1 We love Alexandria!

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



museum
متحف



restaurant
مطعم



cuisine
طعام مطهو - مطبخ



market
سوق



bank
بنك



library
مكتبة



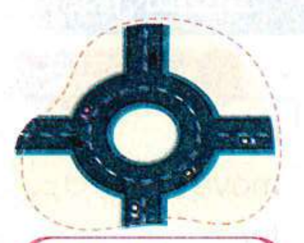
station
محطة (قطار)



factory
مصنع



monuments
آثار



square
ميدان



shopping mall
مول تجاري



beach
شاطئ



on vacation
في إجازة



spend ages
يقضي وقتًا طويلًا



originally
في الأصل - أساسًا



hotel
فندق

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

local ingredients	مكونات محلية	modern buildings	مباني حديثة
culture	ثقافة	store	متجر
traditions	تقاليد	roof garden	حديقة على السطح
traditional	تقليدي	tourist	سائح
mint	نعناع	relaxing	هادئ
amazing	مدهش - مذهل	fresh	طازج
old buildings	مباني قديمة	excellent	ممتاز

Countries & Cities دول ومدن

Germany	ألمانيا	England	إنجلترا
Barcelona	برشلونة	Egypt	مصر
Alexandria	الإسكندرية	Fayoum	الفيوم

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
own	يملك - يمتلك	owned	serve	يُقدم طعام	served
remind	يُذكّر	reminded	move	ينقل - يحرك	moved
repeat	يكرر	repeated	try	يجرب	tried
work	يعمل	worked	prefer	يُفضّل	preferred
visit	يزور	visited	chat	يدردش	chatted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	do	يفعل	did
sit	يجلس	sat	think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought
get hot	يصبح ساخنًا	got hot	buy	يشتري	bought
drink	يشرب	drank	see	يرى	saw
swim	يسبح	swam	find out	يكتشف	found out



Why we love Alexandria! لماذا نحب الإسكندرية!

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach! We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think …

الإسكندرية مكان مثير حقًا لزيارته. يوجد الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكن أن تراها وتفعلها! فهي مدينة كبيرة بها الكثير من المطاعم والمتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف الرائعة. كما أن بها شاطئ كذلك! لقد سألنا بعض الناس الذين يعيشون هناك وبعض السُيّاح عن آرائهم فيها ...

Jens: I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

يينس: لقد قَدِمتُ من ألمانيا لزيارة الإسكندرية. أعتقد أن المكان رائع حقًا هنا. أظن أنه يوجد بعض المتاحف الجيدة، لكني لم أزر أيًا منها بعد. أحب الجلوس في حديقة سطح الفندق الذي أُقيمُ فيه، وشُربِ شاي النعناع المصري حلو المذاق، والدردشة مع الآخرين. إنه أمر مريح للغاية.

Hanan: I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

حنان: لقد عشتُ في الإسكندرية طوال حياتي. وأنا أملك مطعمًا هنا، لذا أودُّ أن أقول إنه يجب أن تزوروا مطعمي لتجربة بعض المأكولات المحلية. نحن نقدم طعامًا مصريًا تقليديًا باستخدام مكونات محلية طازجة ورائعة. لدينا متاجر كبيرة ممتازة، لكنني أفضل شراء مكوناتي من سوق البلدة القديمة.



Kira and Lena: We're from a small town in England. The stores aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria – the shopping malls! We spend ages walking around them. We like the people. They are so friendly!

كيرا ولينا: نحن من بلدة صغيرة في إنجلترا. والمتاجر ليست جيدة هناك. وهذا أكثر ما نحبه في الإسكندرية - مراكز التسوق! نحن نقضي الكثير من الوقت في التجول فيها. نحن نحب الناس هنا، فَهُم ودودون جدًا!

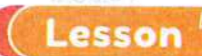
Kareem: I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach – there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in summer, so it's great to go there and swim.

كريم: أنا مصري، وفي الأصل من القاهرة. انتقلت إلى الإسكندرية العام الماضي وأحب العَيش هنا. أنا أعمل في بنك. والمكان المفضل لديّ هو الشاطئ - لايوجد شاطئ في القاهرة! أحيانًا يكون الجو هنا حارًا جدًا في الصيف، لذلك فمن الرائع الذهاب إلى الشاطئ والسباحة.

Paulo: I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home – a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old buildings. Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions. The library is amazing!

باولو: أنا قادم من برشلونة لقضاء إجازة هنا. أحب الإسكندرية لأنها تذكّرني بمدينتي - مدينة كبيرة وحديثة تُطلّ على البحر. أحبُّ مزيج المباني الحديثة والقديمة. كما أحبُّ التعرف على الثقافة والتقاليد. والمكتبة مدهشة!







Activity

Match the places and people:







1 Sara	2 Ahmed	3 Dina	4 Youssef
....	....	....	....

Narrator : 1 Sara

Sara : I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle. We're going by train.

سارة: سأقوم بزيارة عمتي وعمي. سوف نذهب بالقطار.

Narrator : 2 Ahmed

Ahmed : My cousin is visiting us and we're going to show him around. He's never seen the Pyramids.

أحمد: ابن عمي سوف يزورنا وسنأخذه في جولة فهو لم يرى الأهرامات من قبل.

Narrator : 3 Dina

Dina : We went on a school trip to find out how cotton is turned into clothes like T-shirts and dresses.

دينا: ذهبنا في رحلة مدرسية لمعرفة كيف يتم تحويل القطن إلى ملابس مثل التيشرتات والفساتين.

Narrator : 4 Youssef

Youssef : I want to borrow some books.

يوسف: أريد أن أستعير بعض الكتب.








a	b	c	d
library	factory	monument	station

Term 2





Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Fayoum is the oldest town in Egypt. Archaeologists think it is more than 7,000 years old.

الفيوم هي أقدم مدينة في مصر. يعتقد علماء الآثار أن عمرها أكثر من 7,000 عام.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

restaurants – beach – see – city

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to ❶ .... and do here! It's a big ❷ .... with lots of amazing ❸ ...., stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach! That's why we love Alexandria.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hotel – museums – tea – mint

I'm Jens. I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good ❶ ...., but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my ❷ ...., drinking sweet Egyptian ❸ .... tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. My uncle works in a big food (school - factory - museum - monument) in Tanta.



2. The library is the place where we can (borrow - meet - buy - sell) or read books.
3. There is a big train (house - school - airport - station) in our town.
4. Molokhia and rice are from the local Egyptian (cuisine - restaurant - recipe - chef).
5. I bought some new clothes from the (shopping mall - museum - bank - hotel).
6. I love drinking sweet Egyptian (hotel - mend - mir - beach) tea.
7. My favorite place is the (market - library - mall - beach). I like to swim in the sea.
8. You must visit my (restaurant - school - museum - garden) to try some of the traditional Egyptian food.
9. The (museum - market - library - restaurant) is amazing! I like reading books.
10. I prefer to buy my ingredients at the (museum - house - library - market) in the old town.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We .... (loves) Alexandria!
2. What .... (are) your favorite thing about your town?
3. We .... (has) excellent supermarkets.
4. Fayoum .... (be) the oldest town in Egypt.
5. I'm .... (visit) Alexandria from Germany.
6. I .... (be) on vacation here from Barcelona.
7. Hanan .... (buy) her ingredients from the market.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name's Hanan. I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

Term 2



Unit 10

A Choose the correct answer:

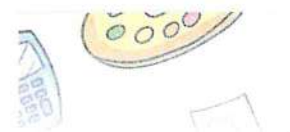
1. Hanan serves traditional (French - German - Egyptian - English) food in her restaurant.
2. The underlined word '<u>here</u>' refers to (the restaurant - Alexandria - Rome - Cairo).

B Answer these questions:

3. What will we try when we go to Hanan's restaurant?
   ▶ ....
4. Where did Hanan buy her ingredients?
   ▶ ....
5. Summarize the text in two sentences.
   ▶ ....

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. Alexandria – is – Who – from?
   ▶ .... ?
2. a really – place – Alexandria – exciting – is.
   ▶ ....
3. must – my – visit – restaurant – You.
   ▶ ....
4. moved – year – I – Alexandria – to – last.
   ▶ ....
5. favorite – beach – is – My – place – the.
   ▶ ....
6. shopping – in – Lena – Alexandria – likes.
   ▶ ....






7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. who is from alexandria

▶ ....

2. i'm egyptian, originally from cairo

▶ ....

3. which of the places are in your town

▶ ....

4. i'm visiting alexandria from germany

▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"My town/village"

▶ Ideas to help you:
- Where is it?
- What about the people in it?

....

....

....

....

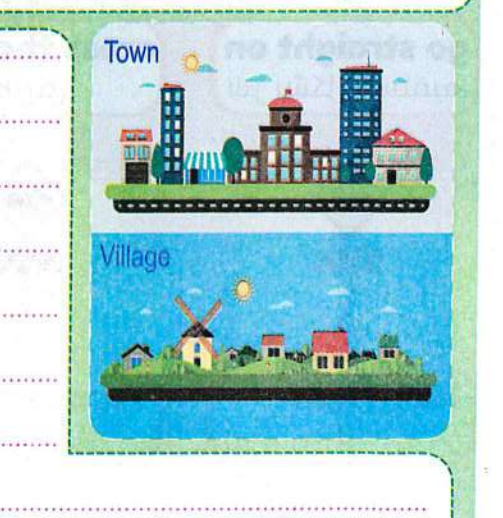
....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2 Don't run in the library!



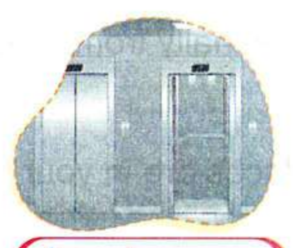
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



librarian
أمين مكتبة



library
مكتبة



elevator
مِصعَد



trash
قمامة

Directions الاتجاهات



go straight on
سِر بشكل مستقيم



cross the road
اعبُر الطريق



across from
في الجهة المقابلة



next to
بجوار



Turn right
اتجه يمينًا



Turn left
اتجه يسارًا



on the right
على اليمين



on the left
على اليسار



get to
يصل إلى



near here
بالقرب من هنا



from here
من هنا



Where
أين

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

bookstore	متجر لبيع الكتب	oven	فرن
train station	محطة قطار	cake	كعكة - كيك
café	مقهى	Excuse me	معذرة - لو سمحت
environment	بيئة	park	حديقة عامة
flowers	زهور	clean	نظيف

Prepositions حروف الجر

stand back	ارجع للوراء	stand up	يقف
begin with	يبدأ بـ	sit down	يجلس
start with	يبدأ بـ	jump up	يقفز لأعلى
go up	يصعد	jump down	يقفز لأسفل
go in/into/inside	يدخل	put in	يُدخل
pick up	يلتقط	return to	يرجع إلى
at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	at the end	في النهاية
into the elevator	داخل المصعد	in the oven	في الفرن

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

Lower your voice.	أخفِض صوتك.
Be quiet.	التزم الهدوء.
talk loudly	يتحدث بصوتٍ عالٍ
miss the first lesson	يفوته الحصة الأولى
make sure	يحرص - يتأكد
crowded places	أماكن مزدحمة
Wait a moment.	انتظر لحظة.
Walk quietly.	امشِ بهدوء.
go upstairs	يصعد للأعلى
Push the number one button.	اضغط علي الزر رقم واحد.



Unit 10

Conjugation of verbs

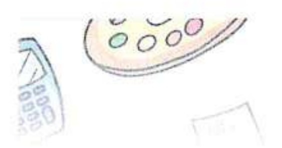
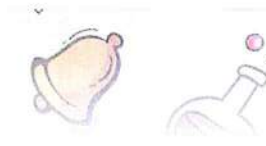
Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

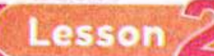
Present		Past	Present		Past
pick	يلتقط	picked	park	يركن السيارة	parked
return	يعود	returned	open	يفتح	opened
wait	ينتظر	waited	waste	يهدر - يضيع	wasted
push	يدفع	pushed	close	يغلق	closed
shout	يصرخ - يصيح	shouted	study	يذاكر	studied
start	يبدأ	started	stop	يتوقف	stopped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
begin	يبدأ	began	keep	يحتفظ	kept
come	يأتي	came	stand	يقف - يتوقف	stood
choose	يختار	chose	bring	يجلب	brought
write	يكتب	wrote	put	يضع	put
speak	يتحدث	spoke	ride	يركب	rode
wear	يرتدي	wore	forget	ينسى	forgot
lose	يفقد	lost	bring ... back	يُعيد	brought ... back



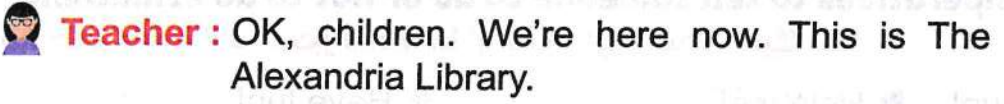





Read and learn





Where are the children going? إلى أين الأطفال ذاهبون؟

Teacher : OK, children. We're here now. This is The Alexandria Library.

المُعلّمة: حسنًا يا أطفال. نحن هنا الآن. هذه هي مكتبة الإسكندرية.

Reem : Wow! It's amazing. Can we go inside?

ريم: يا للروعة! إنها مذهلة. هل يمكننا الدخول؟

Teacher : Wait a moment. Is everybody here? Yes, OK. Let's go in.

المُعلّمة: انتظروا لحظة. هل الجميع هنا؟ نعم، حسنًا. هيا ندخل.

Ali : I'm going first!

علي: سأدخل أولًا!

Teacher : Don't run, Ali. Walk quietly. This is a very important place.

المُعلّمة: لا تركض يا علي. امش بهدوء. هذا مكان هام للغاية.

Ali : I'm sorry.

علي: أنا آسف.

Noha : Can we go upstairs to the Children's Library?



نهى: هل يمكننا الصعود إلى مكتبة الأطفال؟

Teacher : Yes. Go into the elevator. Good. Stand back. The doors are closing. Don't jump up and down, Ali! Push the number one button, Tarek. Great, thank you. We're going up!



المُعلّمة: أجل. ادخلوا المصعد. جيد. ارجعوا للوراء. الأبواب تغلق. لا تقفز في المصعد يا علي! اضغط الزر رقم واحد يا طارق. عظيم، شكرًا لك. نحن صاعدون إلى الأعلى!



GRAMMAR STUDY

The imperative صيغة الأمر

- **We use imperatives to tell someone to do or not to do something.**
- نستخدم صيغة الأمر لنخبر شخصًا ما أن يفعل أو ألا يفعل شيئًا ما.

▶ Stand up! ▶ Help me! ▶ Have fun!

▶ Don't run. ▶ Don't close the window. ▶ Don't be late tomorrow!

- **Imperatives don't usually begin with a subject like you, she or they. Imperatives usually start with a verb.**
- لا تبدأ صيغة الأمر بفاعل مثل (you – she – they ....)، بل عادةً ما تبدأ بفعل.
- **Affirmative imperatives use the infinitive without to:**
- عند توجيه الأمر بشكل مثبت، نضع الفعل في المصدر فى أول الجملة بدون (to).

▶ Run! ▶ Sit down. ▶ Open the door, please.

▶ Please pick up that trash.

▶ Put the cake in the oven, please.

- **Negative imperatives use don't + infinitive without to:**
- النهي عن فعل شيء، نبدأ الجملة بـ (Don't) وبعدها الفعل في المصدر بدون (to).

▶ Don't eat in the library, please.

▶ Don't waste your time.

Giving directions إعطاء الاتجاهات

- **When we ask for directions, we say:** عندما نسأل عن الاتجاهات نقول:

▶ Excuse me, how do I get to (the station)?

▶ Is there (a library) near here?

▶ Where is the (post office), please?

- **We use the imperative to give instructions:**
- نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء التوجيهات:

▶ Turn right! Cross the road.



Read and learn

Where does the tourist want to go?
أين تريد السائحة أن تذهب؟



Tourist: Excuse me, how do I get to the museum from here?

السائحة: من فضلك، كيف يمكنني الوصول إلى المتحف من هنا؟

Girl: Go straight, turn left at the end of the road and the museum is on your right.

البنت: اتجهي مباشرة للأمام ثم اتجهي يسارًا عند نهاية الطريق وسيكون المتحف على يمينك.

Tourist: Thank you very much!



السائحة: شكرًا جزيلاً لك.



Listening

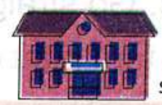
Activity



Write the letters on the map:











Narrator : A

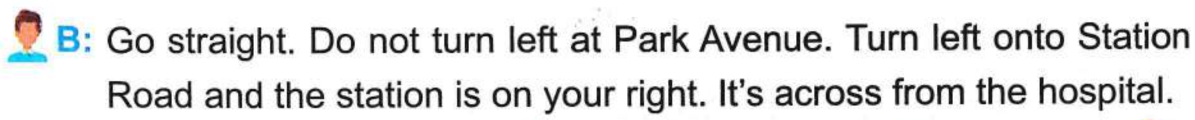


A: Excuse me, how do I get to the station?



: معذرةً، كيف يمكنني أن أصل إلى المحطة؟



B: Go straight. Do not turn left at Park Avenue. Turn left onto Station Road and the station is on your right. It's across from the hospital.

:اتجه مباشرة للأمام. لا تتجه يسارًا عند بارك أفينيو. انعطف يسارًا علي طريق المحطة وستكون المحطة علي يمينك. إنها في الجهة المقابلة للمستشفى.

A: Thank you.

:شكرا لك.



Narrator : B

C: Excuse me, where is the supermarket?

:معذرةً، أين السوبر ماركت؟

B: Ah, go straight on Main Street. Go over Park Avenue and Station Road. Turn right onto High Street and the supermarket is on your right.

: تجهي مباشرة للأمام في الشارع الأساسي. تجاوزي بارك أفينو وطريق المحطة. انعطفي يمينا في الشارع الرئيسي وستجدين السوبر ماركت على يمينك.

C: That's great. Thank you very much.

:رائع. شكرًا جزيلاً لك.

Narrator : C

D: Excuse me, is there a café near here?

:من فضلك هل يوجد مقهى بالقرب من هنا؟

B: Yes, there is. Go straight on Main Street. Don't turn right into Park Avenue, but turn right onto Station Road. You'll see a bookstore on your left. The café is next to the bookstore.

:نعم،يوجد. اتجهي مباشرةً على الشارع الأساسي. لا تتجهي يمينًا في بارك أفينو، ولكن اتجهي يمينًا إلى طريق المحطة. سوف تري متجر لبيع الكتب على يسارك. المقهى بجوار متجر . تب.

D: Many thanks.

:جزيل الشكر.





Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

right – in – on – straight

There's a café near here. If you want to reach it, go ❶ .... on Main Street. Don't turn ❷ .... into Park Avenue, but turn right onto Station Road. You will see a bookstore ❸ .... your left. The café is next to the bookstore.

2 Choose the correct answer: The imperative

1. (Eating - Eats - Don't eat - Eat) fruits and vegetables to stay healthy.
2. (Spend - spends - Spending - Don't spend) your time doing unimportant things.
3. Please, (wrote - write - writing - writes) your answer in short sentences.
4. (Didn't - Don't - Do - Doesn't) your homework every day.
5. (Doing - Don't - Doesn't - Do) eat in the class.
6. Stop making noise and (listen - listening - not listen - listens) to me, please.
7. Don't (comes - came - come - coming) to school late.
8. You're late. (Hurries - Don't hurry up - Hurry up - hurried) or you'll miss the train!
9. Always (keeping - keeps - keep - to keep) quiet when you are in your school library.
10. (Don't - Doesn't - Doing - Do) the housework with your mother.
11. (Not - Doesn't - Always - Don't) touch paintings when you visit a museum.
12. Faten, (don't - do - didn't - does) this exercise again, please.
13. (Don't work - Work - Working - Works) with your classmates to do this project together.
14. Don't (shout - shouting - shouted - shouts) in class.
15. Don't (be - is - was - are) late tomorrow!
16. Please (picks - pick - picked - picking) up the trash.



3 Choose the correct answer: Giving directions

1. Excuse me, (how - when - who - where) do I get to the station?
2. Excuse me, (who - how - which - where) is the station, please?
3. The supermarket is (in - on - at - to) the left.
4. Go straight (at - to - in - on), then turn right.
5. The museum is (cross - crossing - across - crossed) from the school.
6. How can I get (at - on - out - to) the bookstore, please?
7. Go straight on. The school is (on - to - in - at) the right.
8. The park is (far from - near - far - far away). You can go on foot.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. .... (Stands) up!
2. .... (Helped) me!
3. .... (Has) fun!
4. Don't .... (running).
5. .... (Didn't) close the window.
6. Don't .... (are) late tomorrow!
7. .... (Are) there a library near here?
8. Where .... (are) the post office, please?
9. Excuse me, how do I .... (gets) to the station?
10. .... (Turned) right!
11. Excuse me, how do I .... (got) to the museum from here?
12. .... (Goes) straight, turn left at the end of the road.
13. The bookstore is .... (in) the right.
14. Go straight .... (at). The café is next to the supermarket.
15. .... (Across) the road. The station is on the left.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. book – Choose – a – good – to read. SB

▶ ....



2. talk – loudly, – Don't – please. SB

▶ ....



3. write – in – Don't – the book. SB

▶ ....

4. the book – Return – its place – to. SB

▶ ....

5. inside – we – Can – go?

▶ .... ?

6. place – is – important – This – very – a.

▶ ....

7. shouldn't – book – You – lose – your.

▶ ....

8. please – noise, – making – Stop.

▶ ....

9. fruit – stay – healthy – to – Eat.

▶ ....

10. clean – the – Keep – environment.

▶ ....

6 **Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

"What you should or shouldn't do inside a park"

▶ **Ideas to help you:** environment - park

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....






Lesson 3 Gabi learns a lesson

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس






villager	قروي
sacks of beans	أكياس حبوب
lost	تائه
traders	تجار

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

branch	فرع شجرة	foolish	أحمق - غبي
ibis	أبو منجل (اسم طائر)	enormous	ضخم - هائل
jerboa	اليربوع (اسم حيوان)	rudely	بفظاظة - بشكل فظّ
anyway	على أي حال	unkindly	بوقاحة - بفظاظة
camel	جَمَل	snake	ثعبان

Sentences & Expression جمل وتعبيرات

the branches of the tree	فروع الشجرة
turned left	انعطَفَ يسارًا
strange-looking bird	طائر شكله غريب
funny-looking creature	مخلوق شكله مضحك
tell the truth	يقول الصدق
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة
entertain the crowds	يسلي الجموع (الناس المجتمعة)
get dark	تُظلم
above the land	فوق الأرض
even if	حتى لو
Do you need any help?	هل تحتاج أي مساعدة؟





Lesson 3

Pronunciation:

- **The same sound is sometimes spelled in different ways, e.g. eight, ate.**

- الصوت الواحد يمكن أن ينطق بطرق مختلفة مثل كلمتي (eight, ate).

go /oʊ/		bite /aɪ/	
show	يعرض	right	صحيح - يمين
grow	يكبر	time	وقت
below	أسفل	write	يكتب
wrote	كتَب	bike	دراجة

boy /ɔɪ/		make /eɪ/	
enjoy	يستمتع	ache	يؤلم
coin	عملة معدنية	bake	يخبز
point	نقطة	eight	رقم ثمانية (8)

Math

estimated answer	إجابة تقريبية	actual answer	إجابة دقيقة
How much	ما ثمن	guess (n)	تخمين
Egyptian pound	الجنيه المصري	For example	على سبيل المثال
It's around	حوالي - تقريبًا	It's close to	حوالي - تقريبًا
It's about	حوالي - تقريبًا	It's near	حوالي - تقريبًا

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended	recognize	يتعرف على	recognized
offer	يعرض	offered	apologize	يعتذر	apologized

Term 2

Present		Past	Present		Past
add	يضيف	added	decide	يقرر	decided
guess	يُخمن - يفترض	guessed	behave	يتصرف	behaved
want	يريد	wanted	walk	يمشي	walked
turn	يتجه	turned	entertain	يسلي - يمتع	entertained
need	يحتاج	needed	ask	يسأل - يطلب	asked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hear	يسمع	heard	sell	يبيع	sold
give	يعطي	gave	fly	يطير	flew
meet	يقابل	met	say	يقول	said
take	يأخذ	took	know	يعرف	knew
tell	يخبر	told	begin	يبدأ	began
understand	يفهم	understood	sleep	ينام	slept

Read and learn

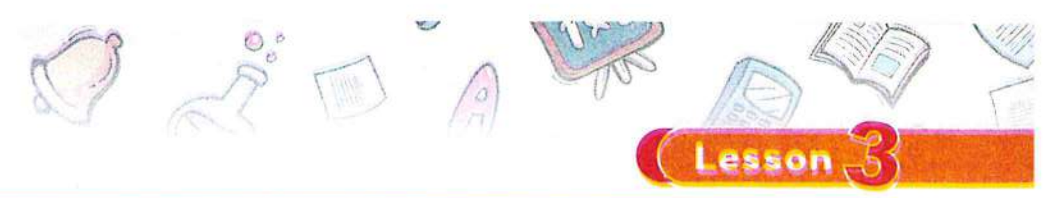
Which animal does Gabi meet first?
ما هو الحيوان الذي قابله جابي أولاً؟

Gabi learns a lesson
جابي يتعلم درسًا



One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the sacks of beans - I will take them to the market for you."

Gabi walked along the road. He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't recognize the road.



"Are you lost?" called an ibis. Gabi had never seen such a strange-looking bird."No, I'm not lost." pretended Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.

Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree.

"You look lost," said the snake.

"No, I'm not," said Gabi - again he wasn't telling the truth. "Anyway, even if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs," he said unkindly. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds.

It began to get dark. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him.

"What a funny-looking creature. Look at those enormous ears," he thought to himself.

"Hello," said the jerboa. "Do you need any help?"

"No, I don't!" replied Gabi rudely. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders.

"OK, good night then, called the jerboa.

Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was foolish and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize and ask for their help the next day.

(في أحد الأيام، أراد قَرَوِيّ أن يبيع حبوبه في السوق، ولكنه لم يكن يستطيع المشي لمسافة طويلة. فقال جمله جابي: "أعطني أكياس الحبوب - سوف آخذها إلى السوق بدلًا منك."

سار جابي على الطريق. استدار يسارًا ثم يمينًا ثم يسارًا مرة أخرى. وسرعان ما تاه جابي على الطريق.

فنادى عليه طائر أبو منجل قائلًا: «هل أنت تائه؟» لم يكن جابي قد رأى طائرًا غريب المظهر مثل هذا من قبل.



قال جابي: «لا، لستُ تائهًا.» لم يكن جابي يعلم أن طائر أبو منجل يمكنه أن يطير عالياً ويخبره بالطريق.
رأى جابي ثعبانًا يراقبه من على أغصان شجرة.
قال الثعبان: «تبدو تائهًا.»
قال جابي: «لا، لستُ تائهًا» - مرة أخرى لم يكن يقول الحقيقة. ثم قال بفظاظة: «على العموم، حتى لو كنتُ تائهًا، لما استطعتَ مساعدتي - فأنت ليس لديك أرجل حتى.» لم يكن جابي يعلم أن الثعبان كان يذهب إلى السوق كل يوم ليُسلّي الحشود.
بدأ الظلام يحل. ورأى جابي حيوانًا صغيرًا على الطريق أمامه.
فقال في نفسه: «يا له من مخلوق مضحك. انظر إلى هاتين الأذنين الكبيرتين للغاية.»
قال اليربوع: «مرحبا. هل تحتاج أي مساعدة؟»
فَرَدّ جابي بوقاحة: «لا، لا أريد.» لم يكن جابي يعلم أن اليربوع يمكنه أن يسمع أصوات تجار السوق.
فقال اليربوع: «حسنًا، تصبح على خير إذن.»
وسرعان ما حلّ الظلام تمامًا وأدرك جابي أنه بحاجة إلى مساعدة الحيوانات. وعَلِمَ أنه كان أحمقًا وقد كان آسفًا على ما فعله. قرر أن ينام، وأن يعتذر لهم ويطلب مساعدتهم في اليوم التالي.

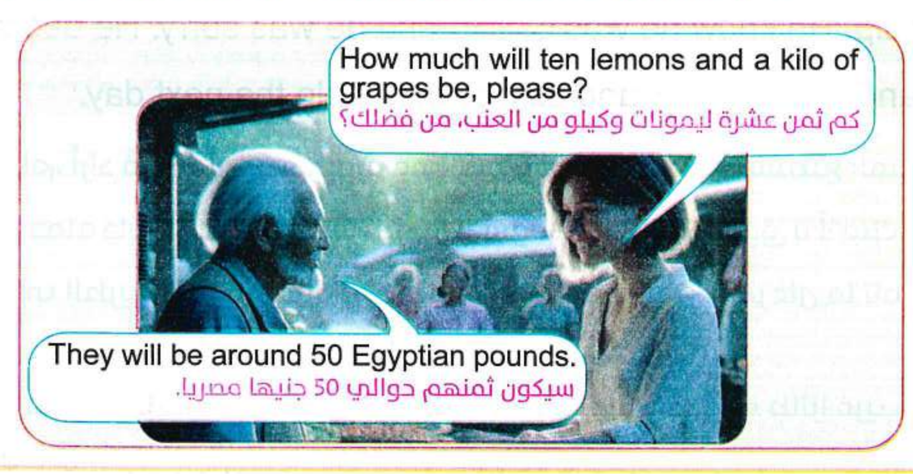


Estimated answers الإجابات التقريبية

An estimated answer isn't the actual answer – it's a good guess. For example, if you add 12 and 17, you know the answer is "close to" 30. You know it isn't close to 60. You can say:

الإجابة التقريبية ليست إجابة دقيقة تمامًا ولكنها تخمين جيد. على سبيل المثال لو جمعنا 12 و 17 فأنت تعرف أن الإجابة قريبة من 30، وتعرف أيضًا أنها ليست قريبة من 60، فيمكنك استخدام أحد التعبيرات الآتية:

It's around ... - It's about ... - It's close to ... - It's near ...



Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sacks – villager – recognize – turned

One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the (1) .... of beans – I will take them to the market for you." Gabi walked along the road. He (2) .... left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't (3) .... the road.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

legs – entertain – market – unkindly

Gabi saw a snake watching him from the branches of a tree. The snake offered to help Gabi, but he didn't want. Gabi said, "Anyway, even if I was lost, you can't help – you haven't even got (1) ....," he said (2) .... Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to (3) .... the crowds.

3 Write the words in the correct places in the table: Student's Book

right – wrote – enjoy – grow – bake – eight – time – write – show – ache – point – coin – bike – below

boy /ɔɪ/	make /eɪ/	go /oʊ/	bite /aɪ/




4 Choose the correct answer:

1. I have a bad tooth (like - ache).
2. Look! There are (eight - ate) trees in the garden.
3. Let's (bike - bake) a cake for my birthday!
4. Does the farmer (grow - write) vegetables?
5. Gabi offered to (want - help) the villager.
6. The ibis could help because he could (fly - help) over the land.
7. The jerboa could help because he could (fly - hear) very well.
8. He knew he was (right - foolish) and he was sorry.
9. Gabi didn't (recognize - entertain) the road.
10. My grandfather usually tells us funny stories to (apologize - entertain) us.

5 Circle the correct estimated answer:



1. 34 + 47 = ... 60 - 80 - 20
2. 77 + 120 = ... 80 - 130 - 200
3. 338 + 336 = ... 480 - 680 - 980
4. 1050 + 50 + 104 = ... 1000 - 1200 - 2000
5. 17 + 39 + 44+ 308 = ... 300 - 400 - 500

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My grandfather usually .... (tell) us funny stories to entertain us.
2. Which animal does Gabi .... (met) first?
3. .... (Gives) me the sacks of beans.
4. I will .... (took) them to the market for you.







5. Look! There .... (is) eight trees in the garden.

6. Gabi didn't .... (recognized) the road.

7. The ibis could .... (helped) because he could fly over the land.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. take – the market – I – them – will – to.

   ▶ ....

2. at – enormous – Look – ears – those.

   ▶ ....

3. help – you – Do – any – need?

   ▶ .... ?

4. decided – to – go – He – sleep – to.

   ▶ ....

5. strangers – talk – shouldn't – to – You.

   ▶ ....

6. good – for – is – Asking – help.

   ▶ ....



Lessons 4 5 Writing & Project



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



waterpark
ملاهي مائية



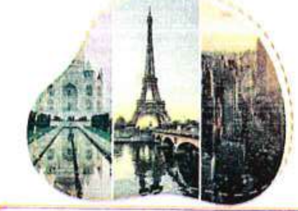
famous bridges
جسور مشهورة



theaters
مسارح



location
موقع



tourist attractions
معالم الجذب السياحي



famous attraction
مَعْلَم سياحي مشهور



famous places
أماكن مشهورة



Buckingham Palace
قصر بكنغهام



the British Museum
المتحف البريطاني



Archaeological Center
مركز أثري



International Park
الحديقة الدولية



the River Thames
نهر التايمز



relaxing boat trip
رحلة استرخاء بالقارب






Lessons 4-5

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

perfect town	مدينة مثالية	picnic	نزهة خلوية
exciting	مثير - مشوّق	airport	مطار
amazing	مدهش - مذهل	plenty	وفرة - كثرة
wonderful	رائع	shade	ظِل
description	وصف	history	تاريخ
delicious	لذيذ - شهي	arts	فنون
amazing treasures	كنوز مدهشة	lake	بحيرة
culture	ثقافة	beach	شاطئ

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

It doesn't matter.	لا يهم.
the fascinating history of the area	التاريخ الرائع للمنطقة
in the world	في العالم
around the world	حول العالم
in the middle of	في وسط
is always open	دائمًا مفتوح
It's free to go in.	الدخول مجاني.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
encourage	يُشجّع	encouraged	borrow	يستعير	borrowed
describe	يَصِف	described	laugh	يضحك	laughed
include	يشمل - يتَضمّن	included	touch	يلمس	touched

Term 2



Unit 10

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
catch the train	يلحق بالقطار	caught the train	choose	يختار	chose
feed	يُطعِم	fed	take	يأخذ	took



Read and learn

London لندن

This is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!


London

تُعتبر لندن إحدى أكثر المدن إثارة في العالم. غالبًا ما تتساقط الأمطار هنا، لكن لا يهم ذلك لأنه يوجد الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكن القيام بها. يمكنك ركوب حافلة حمراء كبيرة وزيارة المعالم السياحية المذهلة. سوف ترى أماكن شهيرة مثل قصر بكنغهام والمسارح والمتحف البريطاني. ويمكنك القيام برحلة استرخاء بالقارب في نهر التايمز والمرور تحت الجسور الشهيرة. كل ذلك التجوُّل سيجعلك تشعر بالجوع! لكن لا تقلق؛ هناك الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة لتختار من بينها. يمكنك أن تجد هنا أطعمة لذيذة من جميع أنحاء العالم!

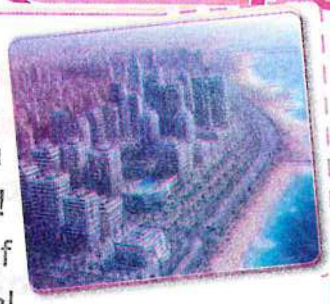
Tip!



- When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, use positive adjectives to describe the place.
- عندما تحاول أن تشجع الناس علي زيارة مكان ما، استخدم الصفات الإيجابية لوصف هذا المكان.



New Alamein العلمين الجديدة



There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.

هناك العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التي يمكن القيام بها في مدينة العلمين الجديدة. تقع المدينة على الشاطئ، لذا يمكنك زيارة البحر البارد عندما يكون الجو حارًا. يبلغ طول هذا الشاطئ الجميل 14 كم! كما أنه يوجد بحيرة خضراء كبيرة في وسط المدينة! يمكنك أيضًا زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة. وإذا كنت ترغب في التعرُّف على التاريخ المذهل للمنطقة، فقم بزيارة المركز الأثري. يوجد بذلك المركز بعض الكنوز المدهشة. لا أطيق الانتظار لرؤيتكم في العلمين الجديدة.

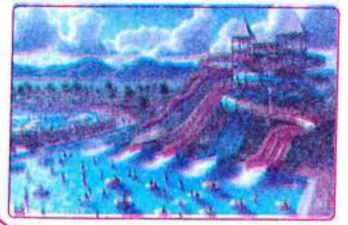
Project

Our perfect town مدينتنا المثالية

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals.
It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in!
There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables.
There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade.
This is our perfect town!

في مدينتنا المثالية، توجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجوار المدرسة مباشرةً. يمكننا الذهاب إليها كل يوم بعد الظهر عند انتهاء الحصص الدراسية. ويمكننا المساعدة في إطعام الحيوانات.
الجو حار للغاية في مدينتنا، لذلك توجد ملاهي مائية مفتوحة دائمًا. والدخول إليها مجاني!
يوجد سوق رائع تُباع فيه جميع أنواع الأطعمة الشهية، مثل الخبز الطازج والفواكه والخضراوات الطازجة. توجد حديقة كبيرة بها الكثير من الأشجار حتى يتسنى لنا الذهاب في نزهات عائلية في الظل.
هذه هي مدينتنا المثالية!











Unit 10

Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

matter – tourist – exciting – world

London is a big city. It is one of the most ❶ .... cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't ❷ .... because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing ❸ .... attractions. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "treasures" refers to (monuments - jewels - stones - pyramids).
2. New Alamein is on the (park - river - lake - beach).

B Answer these questions:

3. How long is the beach in New Alamein?
   ▶ ....
4. What can you visit in New Alamein?
   ▶ ....

5. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶ ....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You can .... (went) on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions.
2. There .... (is) many exciting things to do in New Alamein.
3. .... (Is) the adjectives positive or negative?
4. This .... (are) our perfect town!
5. I can't .... (waits) to see you in New Alamein.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. amazing – There – some – are – treasures.

▶ ....

2. visit – Park – can – International – You – the.

▶ ....

3. of – There – plenty – are – restaurants.

▶ ....

4. really – our – It's – hot – in – town.

▶ ....

5. wonderful – is – There – market – a.

▶ ....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. you will see famous places like buckingham palace and the british museum

▶ ....



2. you can take a relaxing boat trip on the river thames

▶ ....

3. there is a big zoo in our perfect town

▶ ....

4. there are many exciting things to do in new alamein

▶ ....

6 **Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:**

"My town/city"

▶ Ideas to help you: famous attractions - location

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)





1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



(4.5Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (223) آخر الكتاب.

1. Paulo is from (Alexandria - Barcelona - Paris).
2. He loves the mix of modern and old (culture - traditions - buildings).
3. Paulo lives near the (sea - river - lake).

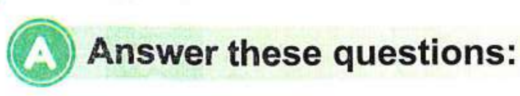
2 Read and complete the dialogue: (8Ms)

upstairs - jump - elevator - Don't

Teacher: OK, children. We're here now. This is The Alexandria Library.
Reem: Wow! It's amazing. Can we go inside?
Teacher: Wait a moment. Is everybody here? Yes, OK. Let's go in.
Ali: I'm going first!
Teacher: ❶ .... run, Ali. Walk quietly. This is a very important place.
Ali: I'm sorry.
Noha: Can we go ❷ .... to the Children's Library?
Teacher: Yes. Go into the ❸ .... Good. Stand back. The doors are closing. Don't ❹ .... up and down, Ali! Push the number one button, Tarek. Great, thank you. We're going up!

3 Read the text and answer the questions: (7.5Ms)

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in! There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade.



A Answer these questions:

1. When can you go to the zoo?

▶ ....

2. What's the weather like in your town?

▶ ....

B Choose the correct answer:

3. There is a wonderful (park - restaurant - market) that sells all kinds of delicious food.
4. The zoo is (far from - next to - behind) the school.
5. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family (trips - picnics - journeys) in the shade.

4 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. Excuse me, how do I (got - gets - get) to the shopping mall?
2. When you make a mistake, you should (entertain - apologize - leave).
3. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist (attractions - directions - conversations).
4. Look! There are (ate - eat - eight) trees in the garden.
5. The museum is (at - in - on) the left.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (5Ms)

1. the oldest - is - Fayoum - in Egypt - town.

▶ ....

2. inside - go - Can - we?

▶ .... ?

3. love - I - drinking - mint tea - sweet Egyptian.

▶ ....

4. office, - is - please - Where - the post?

▶ .... ?

5. is - Alexandria - exciting - a really - to visit - place.

▶ ....



Total
30

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (224) آخر الكتاب.

1. (Cairo - London - Paris - China) is one of the most exciting cities in the world.
2. It often (blows - shines - rains - travels) in London.
3. You can visit amazing (tourist - monument - museum - town) attractions.
4. You will see famous places like Buckingham (Castle - Palace - Citadel - Museum).

2 Choose the correct answer: (1.5Ms)

1. Yesterday, I didn't (entertain - understand - recognize - apologize) my street because it was dark.
2. To go upstairs, use the (factory - elevator - basket - station).
3. I liked the restaurant. The food was (delicious - bad - salty - strange).

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

beach – bank – hot – summer

I'm Kareem. I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a ❷ .... My favorite place is the ❸ .... – there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in ❹ ...., so it's great to go there and swim.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

Alexandria is a fabulous city in Egypt. It is in the north of Egypt. It's famous for its ancient and modern buildings, beautiful beaches and friendly people. People like to go there in the summer holidays to enjoy the fresh air of the sea and go swimming or fishing. During the school year, our school made

Term 2

a trip to Alexandria. There, we visited one of the greatest libraries in the world. It's the Alexandria Library. People from all over the world visit this library. It was really a fantastic trip.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Alexandria is in the (south - west - east - north) of Egypt.
2. The underlined word "There" refers to (Alexandria - the library - Egypt - the trip).

B Answer these questions:

3. Why do people go to Alexandria during the summer holidays? ▶ ....
4. What is Alexandria famous for? ▶ ....
5. Give a suitable title to the text. ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. for - this - bike - Is - a new - me?
   ▶ .... ?
2. eat - library - You - in - shouldn't - the.
   ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. Faten, ... (does) this exercise again, please.
2. The museum is .... (in) your right.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (4Ms)

1. wear your jacket, please ▶ ....
2. he is from cairo. ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)



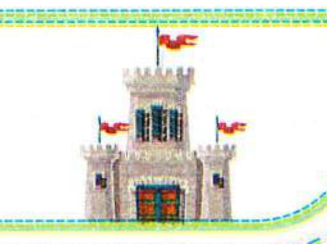
"A visit to the Castle"

▶ **Ideas to help you:** last week – liked

....

....

....







Unit 11

Vacations
إجازات

In this unit I will ....

- listen, read, research, and write about vacations.
- think about environmental responsibility.
- practice using prepositions of time.
- learn about different types of triangles.
- think about my perfect vacation.
- write a diary entry for my best day on vacation.
- make a poster for a vacation destination.
- listen to a conversation.
- read and say words with the *th* sound.

Objectives

Vocabulary	**Travel**: hotel, passport, swimming pool, suitcase, ticket, tourist, beach, camera, city, museum, sunglasses, theme park, traditional, day trip, capital, wander,handicrafts, stall
Language	Prepositions of time, i.e. on Mondays / my birthday, at 8 pm / lunchtime, in June / 2010 The adjective suffixes: -ous (e.g. dangerous, famous) and -ive (e.g. creative, expensive)
Reading	- Email about a vacation - Text about a trip to an Egyptian park - Text about a trip to Jordan - Diary entry about a trip
Listening	- Short dialogs about plans for different times of the day
Speaking	- Talking about a place you would like to visit - Talking about things to do on vacation - Talking about things you do at different times of the day
Writing	- Diary entry about a day when you did something special
Project	- A poster about your perfect vacation
Phonics	Correctly pronounce the sounds /θ/ (e.g. *thing*) and /ð/ (e.g. *these)*
Life skills	**Decision making:** Things to take on vacation where to go on vacation
Values	**Independence and flexibility:** Deciding on what you would enjoy doing on vacation **Respect and personal growth:** Respecting privacy: do not read other people's diaries
Issues and challenges	**Environmental responsibility:** Using natural and man-made resources - How can you make your vacation more environmentally friendly?
Inegrated cross-cultural topics	**- Science:** Natural and man-made resources **- Math:** Triangles

Lesson 1 A world trip



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



hotel فندق



suitcase حقيبة سفر



ticket تذكرة



airport مطار



passport جواز سفر



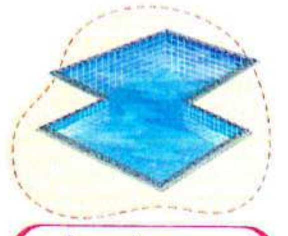
flight رحلة طيران



theme park مدينة ترفيهية



high-rise buildings مبانٍ مرتفعة



swimming pool حمام سباحة



tourist سائح



business trip رحلة عمل



special place مكان مميز

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Japan	دولة اليابان	**floor**	طابق - دور
busy city	مدينة مزدحمة	**comfortable**	مريح
Singapore	دولة سنغافورة	**huge**	ضخم
island	جزيرة	**luckily**	لحسن الحظ
The Gardens by the Bay	حدائق الخليج	**aloud**	بصوتٍ عالٍ
husband	زوج	**take long**	يستغرق مدة طويلة
island	جزيرة	**museum**	متحف



Lesson 1

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب
straight away	فورًا
on a business trip	في رحلة عمل - على الفور
traveling around the world	السفر حول العالم
on the roof	علي السطح
get through the airport	الوصول إلي المطار
in the middle of	في وسط
pack the suitcases	نحزم الحقائب
It's about 36 degrees.	تبلغ درجة الحرارة حوالي 63 درجة.

Vocabulary Study

theme park	: You can have fun here and go on different rides.
hotel	: This is somewhere to stay when you are on vacation.
suitcase	: You put your clothes and other things in this when you travel.
passport	: You need this to travel to a different country.
beach	: You can make sandcastles and swim in the sea here.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
travel	يسافر	traveled	receive	يستقبل	received
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	believe	يصدق	believed
pack	يحزم (الحقائب)	packed	hope	يأمُل - يتمنى - يؤمن	hoped
stay	يبقى	stayed	arrive	يصل	arrived

Term 2

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
read	يقرأ	read
leave	يغادر - يترك	left
forget	ينسى	forgot
fly	يطير	flew
sit	يجلس	sat

Present		Past
sleep	ينام	slept
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought
spend (time)	يقضي (وقت)	spent
send	يرسل	sent
take	يأخذ	took



Read and learn

Where are Uncle Hani and Aunt Nadia now?
أين العم (هاني) والعمة (نادية) الآن؟



Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hani. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hani were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.

تلقت أمي رسالة بريد إلكتروني من أختها نادية وزوجها هاني. إنهم في رحلة عمل يسافرون حول العالم.لقد كانت نادية وهاني في الهند الأسبوع الماضي، وهذا الأسبوع في سنغافورة. تقرأ أمي البريد الإلكتروني بصوت عالٍ لابنتها رنا وابنها علي.

A trip to Singapore رحلة إلى سنغافورة



From: Nadiax@mail.com
To: Samiax@mail.com
Subject: My trip
Dear Samia,
Hello to you all from Singapore! It's hot here – about 36 degrees. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The flight from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable and we both slept.

It didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived – we got our suitcases straight away.

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the museum of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!

I hope you are all well. We will fly to Japan tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases again!

Love,

Nadia

من: Nadiax@mail.com

إلى: Samiax@mail.com

الموضوع: رحلتي

أرسل سلامي إليكم جميعًا من سنغافورة! الجو حار هنا - حوالي 36 درجة مئوية. لحسن الحظ لدينا غرفة فندق جميلة. نحن في الطابق 42. والمنظر الذي نُطلّ عليه جميل ويمكننا رؤية الشاطئ. هناك مسبح ضخم على سطح الفندق! هل تصدقون ذلك؟ لقد استغرقت الرحلة من الهند حوالي ست ساعات، لكنها كانت مريحة وقد نام كِلَانا. لم يستغرق اجتياز المطار وقتًا طويلاً عندما وصلنا - لقد أخذنا حقائبنا على الفور.

سنغافورة مدينة رائعة، يوجد فيها الكثير من المباني الشاهقة. ولكن يوجد فيها أيضًا العديد من المتنزهات والحدائق والأشجار التي يمكن الجلوس تحتها والاسترخاء. تُعد الحدائق المطلة على الخليج مكانًا خاصًا جدًا، حيث توجد بها زهور ونباتات من جميع أنحاء العالم. لقد قضينا الكثير من الوقت هناك. التواجد هناك يُنسيك أنك في وسط مدينة مزدحمة.

بالأمس ذهبنا في رحلة بالقارب مع بعض السياح الآخرين إلى إحدى الجُزُر، وكان بها مدينة ملاهي. كانت الرحلة ممتعة للغاية! بعد ذلك قمنا بزيارة متحف الآيس كريم! وأكلتُ آيس كريم "ملكة النحل" ويتكون من الفانيليا والعسل مع الشوكولاتة. لقد كان رائعًا!

أتمنى أن تكونوا بخير جميعًا. سنطير إلى اليابان غدًا وسأرسل لكم بريدًا إلكترونيًا آخر عندما نصل. الآن عليّ أن أجد تذاكرنا وجوازات سفرنا وأن أحزم حقائبنا مرة أخرى!

محبتي،

نادية



Unit 11

أضف إلى معلوماتك:

The Gardens by the Bay"

"حدائق الخليج هي محمية طبيعية في وسط مدينة سنغافورة. يتألف المجمع الطبيعي من ثلاث حدائق ذات واجهات بحرية: حديقة جنوب الخليج، حديقة شرق الخليج وحديقة وسط الخليج. أكبر هذه الحدائق هي حديقة الخليج الجنوبية.

Did you know? **هل تعلم؟**

Egypt is one of the most popular vacation destinations in the world. Millions of people visit Egypt every year.

تُعد مصر من أشهر الوجهات السياحية لقضاء الإجازات في العالم. يزور ملايين الناس مصر كل عام.



Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

world - high-rise - local - Gardens

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of ❶ .... buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The ❷ .... by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the ❸ .... We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

museum - passports - theme - tourists

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some ❶ .... to an island. There is a ❷ .... park. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the museum! I had ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great! We will fly to Japan tomorrow. Now I have to find our tickets and ❸ .... and pack our suitcases!





3 Choose the correct answer:

1. You need a (book - passport - newspaper - notebook) to travel to a different country.
2. You can make sandcastles on the (park - club - school - beach) and swim in the sea.
3. Tourists stay in a (hotel - school - high-rise building - suitcase) when they are on vacation.
4. You can have fun and go on different rides at the (building - theme park - museum - airport).
5. We put our clothes in a (flight - pool - suitcase - class) when we travel.
6. There's a huge swimming (pool - cafe - museum - restaurant) on the roof of the hotel for people to swim!
7. He is on a business (man - road - person - trip) to Turkey.
8. We will go to the (airport - theme park - museum - station) to take the plane to Japan.
9. (Newspaper - Tourists - Suitcases - Passports) visit famous places in Egypt every year.
10. I have to buy a (ticket - newspaper - book - passport) to take the train.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. When you are in that place, you really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Singapore is a wonderful (village - town - city - country).
2. The opposite of the underlined word "busy" is (crowded - empty - full - large).





B Answer these questions:

3. Where can you relax in Singapore?
   ▶ ....
4. Why is the Gardens by the Bay a special place?
   ▶ ....
5. Summarize the text in two sentences.
   ▶ ....

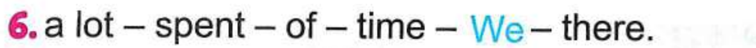
5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I always .... (takes) my phone so I can take photos.
2. Where .... (is) Uncle Hani and Aunt Nadia now?
3. Yesterday they .... (go) to a museum.
4. There .... (is) lots of high-rise buildings.
5. We will .... (flying) to Japan tomorrow.
6. Now I .... (has) to find our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. received – from – Mom – an email – her sister.
   ▶ ....
2. were – India – last week – They – in.
   ▶ ....
3. huge – pool – a – There's – swimming.
   ▶ ....
4. city – Singapore – wonderful – is – a.
   ▶ ....
5. we – on – Yesterday, – went – trip – a boat.
   ▶ ....





6. a lot – spent – of – time – We – there.

▶ ....

7. will – to – fly – We – Japan – tomorrow.

▶ ....

8. do – take – What – you – on vacation?

▶ .... ?

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. hello to you all from singapore

▶ ....

2. we will fly to japan tomorrow

▶ ....

3. can you believe that the flight from india took only six hours

▶ ....

4. no i don't like adventure sports

▶ ....

5. where's your science book rana

▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"My next mid-year vacation"

▶ Ideas to help you:

- Where will you go? - What will you do?
- With whom will you go?

....

....

....

....

....

....







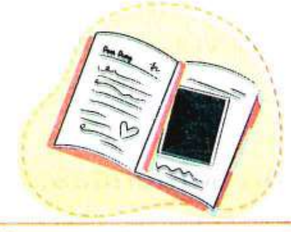

Lesson 2 A special trip



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



tour
جولة سياحية



diary entry
تدوينة في مفكرة اليوميات



diary
مفكرة - يوميات



wander (v)
يتجول



traditional
تقليدي



day trip
رحلة ليوم واحد



arts
أعمال فنية



handicrafts
حِرَف يدوية



citadel
قلعة - حصن



check in
تسجيل الدخول فى فندق

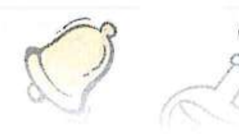
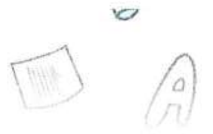


flight
رحلة جوية



crafts
أعمال يدوية




Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

capital city	المدينة العاصمة	free time	وقت فراغ
the Dead Sea	البحر الميت	Zambia	جمهورية زامبيا بأفريقيا
leaflet	كتيب - منشور	Jordan	الأردن
mud	طين	Amman	عمان (عاصمة الأردن)
complete (adj)	كامل	Jordanian	أردني الجنسية
much salt	الكثير من الملح	colorful rug	سجادة زاهية الألوان
Roman Amphitheater	المدرج الروماني	the Archaeological Museum	المتحف الأثري
able to	قادر على	stalls	أكشاك
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	trading center	مركز تجاري

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

head out of the city	يتوجه خارج المدينة
good for your skin	جيد لبشرتك
on the way	في الطريق
on the first day	فى اليوم الأول
desert tours trip	رحلات صحراوية
You're able to float on the water.	أنت قادر علي أن تطفو علي سطح الماء.
the best day ever	أفضل يوم علي الإطلاق

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
check	يفحص - يراجع	checked	discover	يكتشف	discovered
play	يلعب	played	stop	يتوقف	stopped
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	land	يهبط - ينزل على الأرض	landed
explore	يستكشف	explored	float	يطفو	floated
walk	يمشي	walked	relax	يسترخي	relaxed
surprise	يُفاجئ	surprised	arrive (at - in)	يصل إلى	arrived (at - in)
visit	يزور	visited	happen	يحدث	happened
listen	يستمع	listened	reach	يصل	reached
carry	يحمل	carried	join	يلتحق - ينضم	joined

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met	drive	يقود سيارة	drove
leave	يترك – يغادر	left	buy	يشتري	bought
read	يقرأ	read	spend	يقضي	spent
find	يجد	found	sell	يبيع	sold
write	يكتب	wrote	take	يأخذ	took

The Lesson Notes

- arrive in ▶▶▶ يصل إلى مكان غير محدد (مثال: دولة أو مدينة ....)
- arrive at ▶▶▶ يصل إلى مكان محدد (مثال: محطة قطار أو مطعم ....)

▶ The tourist arrived in Cairo at ten o'clock.

▶ The tourist arrived at Cairo airport at ten o'clock.



A diary is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day. A diary entry is a piece of writing in a diary.
اليوميات هي كتاب تكتب فيه الأشياء التي تحدث لك كل يوم.إدخال اليوميات هو قطعة من الكتابة في مذكرات.

Read and learn

Desert Tours Trip to Jordan October 4–8
رحلة صحراوية إلى الأردن

Day 1: Arrive in Amman and check in to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a traditional Jordanian dinner in the evening.

اليوم الأول: الوصول إلى عمان وتسجيل الدخول في الفندق الذي ننزل به في وسط المدينة. الاستمتاع ببعض الوقت الحر في المدينة قبل التجمّع في مطعم ممفيس لتناول عشاء أردنيّ تقليديّ في المساء.

Day 2: Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous Amman Citadel before exploring the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful, markets.

اليوم الثاني: نستمتع اليوم بجولة في عَمَّان. زيارة قلعة عمان الشهيرة قبل استكشاف المدرج الروماني ومتحف الآثار. بعد تناول وجبة غداء متأخرة في مطعم محليّ، قضاء فترة الظهيرة والمساء في التجول في العديد من أسواق عَمَّان الزاهية.

Day 3: Today we head out of the city for a day trip to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman, in the Ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover the history of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center.

اليوم الثالث: اليوم نخرج من المدينة في رحلة نهارية إلى السلط. على بعد حوالي ساعة من عَمَّان، ستجد في مدينة السلط القديمة الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية. الأسواق رائعة ويوجد العديد من القطع الفنية والمشغولات اليدوية التقليدية لشرائها. سوف نزور متحف أبو جابر ونكتشف تاريخ السلط كمركز تجاريّ هام في الأردن.





Day 4: No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your skin.

اليوم الرابع: لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن بدون الذهاب في رحلة إلى البحر الميت. يوجد الكثير من الملح في هذا البحر لدرجة تمكِّنك من أن تطفو على سطح الماء! يمكنك أيضًا الاستمتاع بطين البحر الميت، وهو مفيد جدًا للبشرة.

Day 5: After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the airport at 5 pm.

اليوم الخامس: بعد الاستمتاع بوجبة إفطار مريحة، نغادر الساعة 11 صباحًا لنقود السيارة لمدة ثلاث ساعات لنعود إلى عمَّان. سنتوقف في الطريق لتناول الغداء قبل الوصول إلى المطار الساعة 5 مساءً.

Nahla's diary entry تدوينة في يوميات نهلة

Thursday, October 6th

Dear diary,

Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with history - I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special day for me. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach our destination. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through the streets and several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls. I bought a lovely colorful rug. Saleh (our tour guide) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!



الخميس، السادس من أكتوبر

دفتر يومياتي العزيز،

لقد كان اليوم هو الأفضل على الإطلاق! أحبُّ أي شيء له علاقة بالتاريخ - دائمًا ما أذهب إلى المتحف في بلدي، لذلك كان اليوم يومًا مميزًا بالنسبة لي. لم تكن رحلة الحافلة سيئة للغاية. استغرق الوصول إلى وجهتنا ساعة واحدة فقط. استمعتُ إلى الموسيقى في الطريق ومر الوقت سريعًا. عندما وصلنا، أتيحت لنا الفرصة للتجول في الشوارع واشترى العديد من الأشخاص المشغولات اليدوية الأردنية التقليدية من الأكشاك. لقد اشتريتُ بساطًا جميلًا ملونًا. كان صالح (مرشدنا السياحي) لطيفًا جدًا وأخذ البساط إلى الحافلة بدلًا عني حتى لا أُضطر إلى حمله أثناء تجولي! وكان هذا من حسن الحظ لأنني قضيتُ ساعات في المتحف!







Narrator : 1

Boy 1 : Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday?

: مرحبًا أيمن هل تريد أن تلعب كرة سلة بعد المدرسة يوم الخميس؟

Ayman : On Thursday? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays.

: يوم الخميس ؟ آسف، لا أستطيع أنا أذهب للسباحة أيام الخميس.

Narrator : 2

Girl 1 : Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend?

: مرحبا أميرة، هل يمكننا الذهاب للتسوق فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟

Amira : Yes please, that sounds good!

: نعم من فضلك، تبدو فكرة جيدة!





Narrator : 3

Dad : Fareed, remember you've got a dentist's appointment this afternoon.

: تذكر يا فريد، لديك موعد طبيب الأسنان وقت الظهيرة.

Fareed : Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it?

: نعم، إنه في تمام الخامسة، أليس كذلك؟

Dad : Yes, that's right.

: حسنًا، هذا صحيح.

Fareed : OK, thanks Dad.

: حسنًا، شكرًا يا أبى.

Narrator : 4

Mom : Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am.

: ستغادر رحلتنا الجوية فى الحادية عشرة صباحًا يا تاليا.

Talia : OK, mom, I'll be ready.

: حسنًا يا أمي، سأكون مستعدة.

Narrator : 5

Sherif : Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning.

: .تذكرى يا أمي، سألعب كرة القدم مع رامى فى الصباح.

Mom : Oh, yes, that's fine Sherif. Thanks for reminding me.

: حسنًا، هذا جيد يا شريف. شكرًا لك لتذكرتك لى.

Narrator : 6

Sara : Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa?

: أمي، متى سنزور جدتنا وجدنا؟

Mom : We're going in July, Sara. Not long now.

: سنذهب في يوليو يا سارة. ليس بعيدًا عن الآن.









Prepositions of time
حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

- **To say when something happens, we use prepositions of time:**
- للتحدث عن وقت حدوث شئ ما نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت:

- **We use on with days of the week and for special days and specific dates:**
- نستخدم (on) مع أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة.
  - I go swimming on Mondays.
  - I am having a party on my birthday.
  - I was born on July 6th, 2010.

- **We use at with times, and to say at night, and at lunchtime:**
- نستخدم (at) مع الأوقات لكي نقول (at night في الليل) و (at lunch time في وقت الغداء)
  - Our flight lands at 8 pm.
  - We play basketball at lunchtime.
  - We sleep at night.

- **We use in with months, seasons, and years, and also with times of day:**
- نستخدم (in) مع الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات ومع أوقات اليوم أيضًا.
  - We visit our cousins in June.
  - I was born in 2010.
  - They arrived in the morning.

in	on	at
in the morning	on Friday (days)	at six o'clock
in the afternoon	on the 2nd of May	at nine thirty
in the evening	on April 1st	at half past two
in October (months)	on July 6th	at lunchtime
in summer (seasons)	on the weekend	at night
in 2010 (years)	on my birthday	at noon



Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mud – skin – salt – airport

No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much (1) .... in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea (2) ...., which is very good for your skin. After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the (3) .... at 5 pm to take the plane.

2 Complete the text with "at, on , or in":

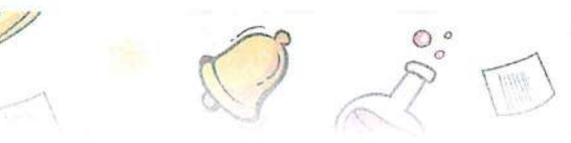


(1) .... Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed (2) .... 4 o'clock (3) .... the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm (4) .... October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center.

Amman is a really busy city (5) .... night. We walked around the markets and bought some traditional handicrafts. We went back to our hotel (6) .... about midnight.

3 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. When you arrive at a hotel, you have to (shake - check - head - wander) in.
2. We went to a famous restaurant for a (craft - tradition - traditional - culture) dinner.
3. Today, we head out of the city for a (day trip - road - river - street).
4. A (deer - dairy - diary - daily) is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day.



5. We had the chance to (head out - wander - check out - check in) through the streets.
6. A diary (country - mystery - history - entry) is a piece of writing in a diary.

4 Choose the correct answer: Grammar (Prepositions of time)

1. We flew to Alexandria (to - at - in - on) Monday.
2. Our flight leaves (in - to - on - at) 8 am.
3. Many people leave the city (on - at - to - in) summer.
4. We are going to the park (at - in - on - to) the afternoon.
5. Her cousin usually visits her (to - in - on - at) July.
6. Dad always arrives home (on - to - at - in) dinnertime.
7. We will meet (at - in - to - on) ten thirty.
8. I go to bed (in - on - at - to) night.
9. I'm going to buy her a present (to - on - at - in) her birthday.
10. He called me (to - at - in - on) the evening.
11. We sometimes go to Aswan (in - on - to - at) January.
12. She was born (on - at - in - to) 2015.
13. His birthday is (to - at - in - on) August 12th.
14. They arrived (in - to - on - at) the 3rd of December.
15. Mom goes to her work (on - at - to - in) the morning.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. want – elephants – I – see – to.

▶ ....

2. markets – wonderful – The - are.

▶ ....

3. hours – museum – I – in – the – spent.

▶ ....

4. very – room – Our – comfortable – was.

▶ ....

5. is – busy – Amman – city – really – a.

▶ ....



6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Dad is a baker. He works .... (on) the mornings.
2. We go to the club .... (in) Saturdays.
3. Does our next class start .... (on) 2 pm?
4. Grandma was born .... (at) 1962.
5. Reem's birthday is .... (at) December 4th.
6. We are going cycling .... (in) the weekend.
7. Is your birthday .... (at) Friday?
8. Our school year ends .... (on) the summer.
9. We're flying to Morocco .... (in) September 20th.
10. Our flight lands .... (on) the evening.
11. Did you visit the museum .... (in) night?
12. He arrives at school .... (on) eight o'clock.

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. on wednesdays, I play football after school
   ▶ ....
2. amman is a really busy city at night
   ▶ ....
3. what country would you like to visit
   ▶ ....
4. did you visit the dead sea
   ▶ ....
5. on monday, we arrived in amman
   ▶ ....






Lesson 3 Al-Azhar Park

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس


a bit low مُحبَط إلى حدٍ ما


bench مقعد


job وظيفة


playground ملعب


show (n) عرض


meal وجبة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

awesome	رائع	cousin	ابن العم/الخال
possible	ممكن	picnic	نزهة
grass	حشائش - عشب	beautiful	جميل
park	حديقة عامة	plants	نباتات
fantastic	رائع	wonderful	رائع

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

go on vacation	يذهب فى إجازة
It sounds interesting.	يبدو مثيرًا للاهتمام.
feel better	يشعر بتحسن
at the beach	علي الشاطئ
How are you?	كيف حالك؟
agreed to	وافق علي



Unit 11



Pronunciation: the /θ/ and /ð/ sounds:

Tip!

- **To make the /ð/ and /θ/ sounds, press your tongue against your top teeth.**
- لكي تنطق الصوت /ð/ والصوت /θ/،اضغط لسانك على أسنانك العلوية.

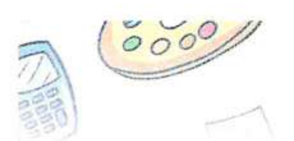
▶ The /θ/ sound is **unvoiced**, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it.

◀ الصوت /θ/ غير منطوق وهذا يعني أنك تشعر ببعض الهواء علي يدك عندما تنطقه.

▶ With the /ð/ sound, there's no air, but you can feel a **vibration** on your neck.

◀ مع الصوت /ð/ ، لا يوجد هواء ولكنك تشعر باهتزاز في أحبالك الصوتية.

/θ/		/ð/	
thing	شئ	these	هؤلاء
bathroom	حمام	they	هم
Thursday	يوم الخميس	those	أولئك
south	جنوب	other	آخر
think	يفكر	this	هذا
birthday	عيد ميلاد	clothes	ملابس
author	مؤلف	with	مع
thousand	رقم 1000	leather	جلد
Earth	الأرض	mother	أم
mouth	فم	father	أب





Math

equilateral triangle	مثلث متساوي الأضلاع	**isosceles triangle**	مثلث متساوي الساقين
2D shape	شكل ثنائي الأبعاد	**three equal sides**	ثلاثة أضلاع متساوية
right angle triangle	مثلث قائم الزاوية	**equal length**	طول متساوٍ
scalene triangle	مثلث مختلف الأضلاع	**different length**	طول مختلف

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
phone	يتصل تليفونيًا	phoned
agree	يقبل - يوافق	agreed
seem	يبدو	seemed
sound	يبدو	sounded

Present		Past
decide	يقرر	decided
follow	يتبع	followed
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)
shout	يصيح	shouted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
feel	يشعر	felt
run	يجري	ran
know	يعرف	knew
sit	يجلس	sat

Present		Past
say	يقول	said
write	يكتب	wrote
come	يأتي	came
has - have	يتناول	had





Read and learn

Al-Azhar Park حديقة الأزهر


Al-Azhar Park, Cairo

Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible – Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo.

كان سليم يشعر بالحزن. كان الصيف حارًا، وكانت الدراسة قد انتهت وأراد الذهاب في إجازة. كان ابن عمه شريف في إجازة على الشاطئ وأراد سليم أن يكون هناك أيضًا. عادة ما كانت عائلته تذهب في الإجازة مع عائلة شريف، ولكن ذلك الأمر لم يكن ممكنًا هذا العام - فوالد سليم حَظِيَ بوظيفة جديدة وكان عليهم البقاء في القاهرة.

Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?", "I'm feeling a bit low – I want to be at the beach", said Seleem.
"Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan. "I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park."
"Hmm," said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it sounds interesting!"

اتصل به صديقه مروان: «مرحبًا، كيف حالك يا سليم؟،» قال سليم: «أشعر بالحزن بعض الشيء - أريد أن أذهب إلى الشاطئ.»
قال مروان: «حسنًا، لا يمكنك الذهاب هذا العام، لذا دعنا نجد شيئًا آخر لنفعله! أعرف مكانًا نذهب إليه، لنذهب إلى حديقة الأزهر.»
قال سليم: «اممم، لا أعرفها، لكنها تبدو مكانًا شيقًا!»

Seleem's mom agreed to take them to the park. She made a picnic, so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past.

وافقت والدة سليم على اصطحابهما إلى الحديقة. أعدّت والدة سليم لنزهةٍ، وعندما وصلوا، جلسوا تحت شجرة كبيرة على العشب الأخضر الرائع واستمتعوا بتناول طعامهم. كان يومًا جميلًا، ولعب مروان وسليم كرة القدم. وفجأة جاء رامي وماجد، صديقَيْهما من المدرسة، راكِضَين.



"Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I thought you were at the beach!"
"No," said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the playground with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went together to the playground. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.

صاح سليم قائلًا: «مرحبًا يا رامي! لماذا أنت في المدينة؟ اعتقدتُ أنك ذهبتَ إلى الشاطئ!»
قال رامي: «لا. جدتي مريضة لذا أرادت أمي البقاء في القاهرة. هناك مجموعة كبيرة منا بقوا في المنزل ولم يسافروا. هل يمكنكَ القدوم إلى الملعب معنا؟» سأل سليم والدته وذهبوا جميعًا معًا إلى الملعب. وجلست الأم على مقعد واستمتعت بكل النباتات والطيور الجميلة الموجودة في الحديقة.

"I think this is a fantastic place," said Mom at the end of the afternoon. "I can see there's a show next week. Let's come back with Dad, see the show, and have a meal at the restaurant." Seleem felt very happy – now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome!

قالت الأم عند نهاية فترة الظهيرة: «أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع.»
«أرى أن هناك عرضًا الأسبوع المقبل. دعنا نعود إلى هنا مع أبيك، ونشاهد العرض، ونتناول وجبة في المطعم.» شعر سليم بسعادة كبيرة - الآن يعرف أن أصدقاءه في المدينة وأن هناك حديقة رائعة. لقد بدا أن الصيف في المدينة سيكون رائعًا!



The triangles
المثلثات

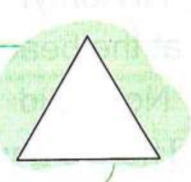
Many tourists come to visit Egypt and one of the most famous places is the Pyramids of Giza. All their sides are triangles.

يأتي العديد من السياح لزيارة مصر ومن أشهر الأماكن أهرامات الجيزة التي كل جوانبها مثلثات.



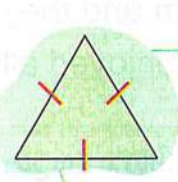


Unit 11



1. A triangle is a 2D shape with three sides.

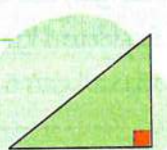
1. المثلث هو شكل ثنائي الأبعاد له ثلاثة جوانب.



2. An equilateral triangle has three equal sides.

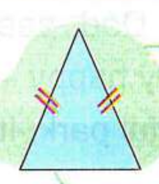
2. المثلث متساوي الأضلاع له ثلاثة أضلاع متساوية.





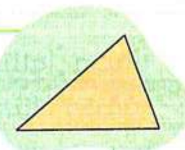
3. A right angle triangle has one angle that measures 90°.

3. المثلث قائم الزاوية له زاوية واحدة قياسها 90 درجة.



4. An isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length.

4. المثلث متساوي الساقين له وجهان متساويان في الطول.



5. A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.

5. المثلث مختلف الأضلاع له ثلاثة جوانب مختلفة الطول.





Some adjectives have common suffixes:

بعض الصفات لها لاحقات شائعة يمكننا إضافة (-ous) و(-ive) في نهاية الكلمات لنحصل علي الصفة.

- Look at the suffix -*ous*: *dangerous, famous, enormous*
- Look at the suffix -*ive*: *creative, expensive*





Root word أصل الكلمة		The suffix (-ous) اللاحقة (-ous)	
fame	شهرة	famous	شهير - مشهور
danger	خطر	dangerous	خطير
poison	سُم	poisonous	سام
		enormous	ضخم

Root word أصل الكلمة		The suffix (-ive) اللاحقة (-ive)	
expense	تكلفة - إنفاق	expensive	غالٍ
create	يبتكر	creative	مبتكِر - مُبدِع
act	يتصرف - يُمثل	active	نشيط

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

low - go - beach - vacation

Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer school was over and he wanted to go on ❶ .... His cousin Sherif was away at the ❷ .... and Seleem wanted to be there too. Marwan, his friend, phoned him and told him that he was feeling a bit ❸ .... and he wanted to be at the beach, too.



Unit 11

2 Put the following words in the correct column, then say them:



bathroom - father - south - they - other - birthday - thousand - clothes - mouth - leather - Thursday - with - thing - those - think - three - Earth - mother - this - author - these

/θ/	/ð/

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. The school was over and I wanted to (play - do - go - make) on vacation.
2. Mom sat on a (bed - beach - table - bench) and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.
3. I'm feeling a bit (high - low - small - over) – I want to be at the beach.
4. The city would be (worse - bad - awesome - not good) in summer! I liked it.
5. A/An (squirrel - equilateral - right angle - scalene) triangle has three equal sides.
6. A (white - play - night - right) angle triangle has one angle that measures 90°.
7. A/An (equilateral - scalene - island - isosceles) triangle has two sides of equal length.

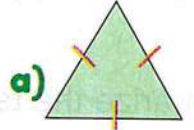




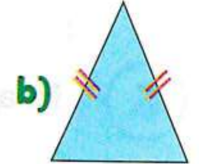


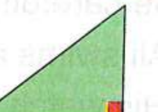
8. A/An (isosceles - scalene - silent - equilateral) triangle has three sides of different length.

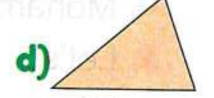
4 Read and match:



1. An equilateral triangle has three equal sides.
2. A right angle triangle has one angle that measures 90°.
3. An isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length.
4. A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.

a) 

b) 

c) 

d)

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ramy's grandma was ill, so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group of the family who stayed at home and didn't travel to Alex. Ramy wanted to go to the playground with Seleem. Seleem asked his mom, and they all went together to the playground. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. It was a fantastic place. Seleem felt very happy – now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Ramy's mom sat on a (beach - bench - river - tree) and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.
2. The summer in the city would be (dangerous - danger - awesome - bad).





B Answer these questions:

3. How was Ramy's grandma?

▶ ....

4. Where did Ramy want to go?

▶ ....

5. Summarize the text in two sentences.

▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Be careful! That snake is .... (poison). SB
2. Ali swims and runs. He's very .... (act). SB
3. His watch is very .... (expense). SB
4. Mohammad Salah is a very .... (fame) footballer. SB
5. Let's .... (going) to Al-Azhar Park.
6. Why .... (is) you in the city?
7. Why did Seleem .... (feels) better at the end of the story?
8. Many tourists .... (comes) to visit Egypt.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. summer – was – a – It – hot.

▶ ....

2. be – want – I – to – at – beach – the.

▶ ....

3. wanted – in – Mom – Cairo – to – stay.

▶ ....

4. this – think – is – place – fantastic – I.

▶ ....

5. had – park – They – wonderful – a.

▶ ....

6. Who – meet – the park – did – Marwan – at?

▶ .... ?








Lessons 4 5 Writing & Project

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



famous sights
مزارات سياحية مشهورة



crowded
مزدحم



turtles
سلاحف - سلاحف بحرية



sand dunes
الكثبان الرملية



snorkeling
الغوص قريبًا من سطح الماء



beach buggy
بييتش باجي (عربة ترفيهية)

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

restaurant	مطعم	local dishes	أكلات محلية (شعبية)
formal language	لُغة رسمية	chef	طباخ
private	خاص	meal	وجبة
market stalls	أكشاك (محلات) السوق	paintings	لوحات - رسومات

Famous places أماكن مشهورة

Marrakech, Morocco	مدينة مراكش في المغرب	France	فرنسا
Jardin Majorelle	حدائق الماجوريل (في مراكش)	Paris	مدينة باريس
Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa	مدرسة علي ابن يوسف (متحف بمراكش)	Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل (في باريس)
Jemaa el-Fnaa	ساحة جامع الفنا (سوق سياحي بمراكش)	the Louvre	متحف اللوفر (في باريس)



Unit 11

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

Can you keep up?	هل تستطيع المجاراة؟
made of metal	مصنوع من المعدن
brightly - colored	زاهية الألوان
I had a cool day.	قضيت يومًا رائعًا.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
wander	يتجول	wandered	include	يتضمن	included
remind	يُذكّر	reminded	race	يسابق	raced
wait	ينتظر	waited	shop	يتسوق	shopped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
speak	يتحدث	spoke	understand	يفهم	understood
swim	يسبح	swam	come	يأتي	came
go	يذهب	went	make	يصنع	made

Read and learn


Marrakech, Morocco


Eiffel Tower, Paris, France



Tip!

▶ Write the date when you start a new diary entry.

◀ اكتب التاريخ الذي تبدأ فيه إدخال يوميات جديدة.







Diaries مذكرات

Reem

July 21st

Dear Diary,

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower.

The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

الحادي والعشرين من يوليو

دفتر يومياتي العزيز،

لقد حظيتُ بيومٍ رائعٍ اليوم. ذهبت إلى النهر، وشاهدنا بعض المعالم السياحية الشهيرة من القارب، مثل متحف اللوفر، وهو متحف جميل به لوحات رائعة، وبرج ايفل. برج ايفل شاهق الارتفاع ومصنوع من المعدن. حاولتُ التحدث باللغة الفرنسية، لكنني لم أستطع قَوْل أي شيء. لكن الفرنسيين كانوا طيبين للغاية وعندما تحدثتُ باللغة الإنجليزية فهموني! في نهاية اليوم ذهبنا إلى مطعم فرنسي وتناولنا وجبة رائعة مع البطاطس. لقد كان يومًا خاصًا.

Amira

April 5th

Dear Diary,

I love this city! There's so much to do. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old! We went early in the morning, but it was still very busy with people. We also visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden where we had a picnic. I like it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home. But my favorite place is Jemaa el–Fnaa, the market place. The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry! I had a sandwich yesterday. I can't wait to go back there tomorrow!

الخامس من أبريل

عزيزي دفتر اليوميات،

أنا أحب هذه المدينة! يوجد الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكن فعلها. ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة علي بن يوسف، وهو متحف جميل عمره 800 عام! لقد ذهبنا في الصباح الباكر، لكن بالرغم من ذلك كان المكان مزدحمًا بالناس. وزرنا أيضًا حدائق ماجوريل، وهو مكان جميل استمتعنا بنزهةٍ فيه. لقد أعجبتني الحديقة لأنها تذكرني بعض الشيء بحديقة الأزهر في بلدي. لكن مكاني المفضل هو ساحة جامع الفنا. إن الروائح التي تفوح من أكشاك السوق تجعلني أشعر بالجوع! لقد تناولتُ شطيرة بالأمس. أتشوق للعودة إلى هناك غدًا!



Project

My perfect vacation إجازتي المثالية



Day 1: In the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkeling. Swim with the turtles and brightly-colored fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic and a good book.

اليوم الأول: في الصباح نذهب إلى الشاطئ للغطس. ونسبح مع السلاحف والأسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية! يمكن قضاء فترة الظهيرة على الشاطئ والاستمتاع بنزهة وقراءة كتاب جيد.



Day 2: Today we race through the sand dunes in beach buggies! It's fun and fast! Can you keep up?

اليوم الثاني: اليوم نتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية ونحن نركب عربات الشاطئ! إنها ممتعة وسريعة! هل يمكنك مجاراتي؟



Day 3: Spend a relaxed day shopping and wandering through the markets. Perhaps buy some traditional handicrafts to take home.

اليوم الثالث: قضاء يوم مريح في التسوق والتجول في الأسواق. وربما شراء بعض المشغولات اليدوية التقليدية لأخذها إلى المنزل.



Day 4: Learn about the city's cultural past with a trip to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the local dishes.

اليوم الرابع: التعرُّف على ماضي المدينة الثقافي مع رحلة إلى المتحف اليوم. في المساء، نذهب إلى مطعم تقليدي حيث يمكنك رؤية الطاهي وهو يعد الأطباق المحلية.



Exercises on Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

metal – sights – paintings – Tower

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous (1) .... from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic (2) ...., and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel (3) .... is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me!

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Mazen. I want to have a perfect vacation. My next trip is to Cairo. I love this city! I want to visit the Cairo Tower. It is very tall and made of metal. I also want to visit the Egyptian Museum. In the Egyptian Museum, I will learn a lot about Egypt in the past. I also want to visit Al-Azhar Park. It has a lot of fantastic trees and flowers. It sounds interesting! I cannot wait to go there soon! Cairo is a wonderful city!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined words "a perfect" mean (a usual - a normal - an ideal - an ugly).
2. The Cairo Tower is made of (glass - wood - metal - stone).

B Answer these questions:

3. Where will Mazen learn about Egypt in the past?
   ▶ ....
4. What does Mazen want to have?
   ▶ ....



5. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶ ....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Do you .... (wanted) to go on this vacation?
2. At a restaurant, you can .... (sees) the chef making the local dishes.
3. We shouldn't .... (reading) other people's diaries.
4. People's diaries .... (is) private.
5. I can't .... (waiting) to go back there tomorrow!
6. The Eiffel Tower .... (are) really tall and made of metal.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. saw – sights – some – We – famous.

▶ ....

2. made – metal – The Eiffel – is – Tower – of.

▶ ....

3. I – speak – to – tried – French.

▶ ....

4. French – were – The – people – kind.

▶ ....

5. city – love – this – I.

▶ ....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. the eiffel tower is really tall

▶ ....

2. french people were very kind

▶ ....

3. do you want to go on vacation

▶ ....

4. we swam with the turtles

▶ ....





6 Write a diary entry on a day when you did something special:

Think of a day when you did something special.
Write a diary entry of about 30-40 words
Remember:

- Write the date.
- Start with "Dear Diary".
- Describe the places / events.
- Say how you felt.

....

....

....

....

7 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"A day when you did something special"

Ideas to help you:
- Describe the places / events.
- Say how you felt.

....

....

....

....



Test 10 on Unit 11

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4.5Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (224) آخر الكتاب.

1. We went to the beach to go (running - fishing - snorkeling).
2. We can race through the sand (dunes - boxes - castles) in beach buggies!
3. We swam with the (sharks - turtles - dolphins) and brightly-colored fish!

2 Read and complete the dialogue: (8Ms)

vacation - Park - awesome - low

Marwan : Hey, how are you, Seleem?

Seleem : I'm feeling a bit ❶ ....

Marwan : Why are you feeling that?

Seleem : I want to go on ❷ .... I want to be at the beach.

Marwan : Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!

Seleem : Where can we go in this city?

Marwan : Let's go to Al-Azhar ❸ ....

Seleem : I don't know it, but it sounds ❹ .... !

3 Read the text and answer the questions: (7.5Ms)

Nadia and her husband Hani are on a business trip traveling around the world. They were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Luckily, they've got a lovely hotel room. They're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and they can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel! The flight from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable and they both slept. It didn't take long to get through the airport when they arrived – they got their suitcases straight away.

A Answer these questions:

1. How long did the flight from India take?

▶ ....

2. Why are Nadia and her husband traveling around the world?

▶ ....

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The underlined word "it" refers to the (flight - hotel - beach).
4. The view from the (forty-first - forty-third - forty-second) floor is beautiful as they can see the beach.
5. The flight from India was (uncomfortable - comfortable - bad).

4 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. Today we (case - race - face) through the sand dunes in beach buggies!
2. Ziad was born (in - at - on) September 5th, 2012.
3. Several people bought traditional Jordanian (restaurants - streets - handicrafts) from the stalls.
4. Amman is a really busy city (at - on - in) night.
5. We will go to the swimming (pool - sea - river) on the weekend.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (5Ms)

1. you - visit - Did - Park - Al-Azhar?

▶ .... ?

2. is - city - a - wonderful - Singapore.

▶ ....

3. up - Can - you - keep?

▶ .... ?

4. phone - expensive - is - My - very.

▶ ....

5. birthday -Is - your - Friday - on?

▶ .... ?



Test 11 on Unit 11





1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (224) آخر الكتاب.

1. Reem went for a trip to (Egypt - France - England - Italy).
2. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of (clay - wood - metal - plastic).
3. Reem tried to speak (French - Arabic - English - Italian), but she couldn't.
4. At the end of the day, Reem went to a (club - park - restaurant - school) and had a meal.

2 Choose the correct answer: (1.5Ms)

1. You can enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very (bad - unhealthy - good - unfriendly) for your skin.
2. I go to the (theme park - station - bus stop - airport) to travel by plane.
3. I want to go on (vacation - station - tradition - destination). I want to be at the beach.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

destination – handicrafts – traditional – museum

Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with history – I always go to the ❶ .... at home, so today was a special day for me. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach our ❷ .... When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through the streets and several people bought traditional Jordanian ❸ .... from the stalls.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

Tourists like to visit Egypt. Tourists come to Egypt from all parts of the world. In Cairo, they visit the Egyptian Museum. They also like to visit Khan El-Khalili and buy the things they need. In Giza, they visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx. Tourists go to Luxor. There, they visit the temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. Tourists also go to Aswan and visit some places there.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "parts" refers to (countries - cities - towns - villages).
2. The Valley of the Kings is in (Cairo - Luxor - Giza - Aswan).

B Answer these questions:

3. What do tourists visit in Cairo? ▶ ....
4. Where are the Pyramids and the Sphinx? ▶ ....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. ▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. bought – rug – lovely – I – a – colorful.
   ▶ ....
2. you – vacation – Do – on – want – to go?
   ▶ .... ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. We visit our cousins .... (on) June.
2. Everyone knows Soha. She is very .... (fame). SB

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (4Ms)

1. i go swimming on mondays. ▶ ....
2. tourists buy things at luxor. ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"A picnic with my family"

▶ Ideas to help you:

Last week - picnic

....

....

....

Term 2



Review

Total
30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود في صفحة (224) آخر الكتاب.

1. New Alamein is on the (lake - river - beach - park).
2. The beach in New Alamein is 14 kms (long - tall - high - short).
3. There is a large, (blue - yellow - red - green) lake right in the middle of the city!
4. There are amazing (treasures - boats - flowers - ships) in the Archaeological Center.

2 Choose the correct answer: (1.5Ms)

1. The (library - museum - restaurant - beach) is awesome! I like reading books.
2. Today, they head out of the city for a (craft - day trip - road - street).
3. I need a (newspaper - passport - suitcase - notebook) to travel to a different country.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

school - restaurant - traditional - cuisine

I'm Hanan. I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a (1) .... here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local (2) .... We serve (3) .... Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. When you are in that place, you really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Singapore is a wonderful (building - town - village - city).
2. The underlined word "that" refers to the (Gardens by the Bay - plants - flowers - trees).

B Answer these questions:

3. What can you see in Singapore?
▶ ....
4. Why is the Gardens by the Bay a special place?
▶ ....
5. What can you do in Singapore?
▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. first - Which - Gabi - meet - animal - does? ▶ .... ?
2. birthday - on - is - My - December - 15th. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. This .... (am) our perfect town!
2. I go to the club .... (at) Fridays.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (4Ms)

1. what country would you like to visit ▶ ....
2. i live in a beautiful city ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"My vacation in Hurghada"

▶ Ideas to help you: snorkeling - diving

....
....
....
....

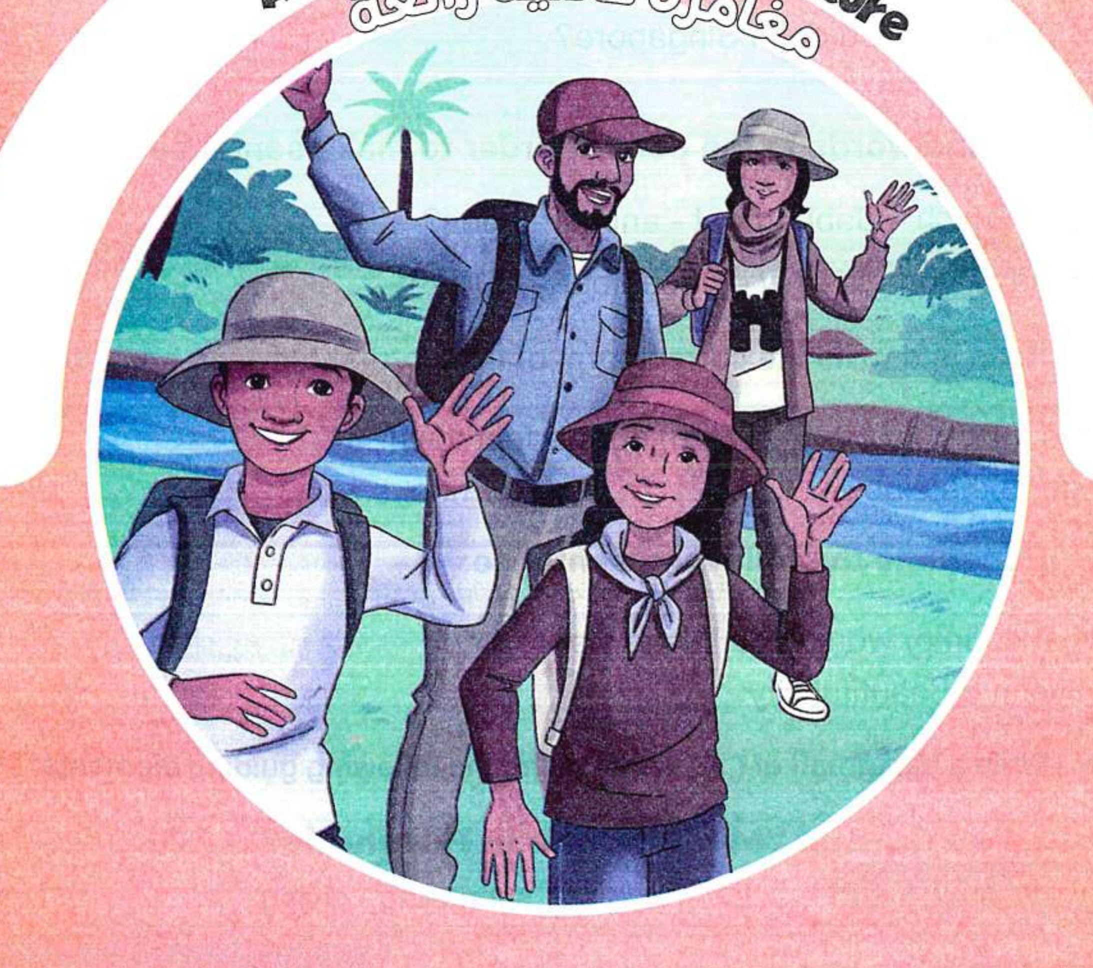


Unit 12

FICTION READER

A Fantastic Family Adventure

مغامرة عائلية رائعة



BY NICOLA GARDNER

ILLUSTRATED BY NATHALIE ORTEGA

Characters الشخصيات



He is Ramy and Malak's father. He was reading a newspaper and called his children to see the story in it. He was excited because archaeologists found something amazing near Grandma and Grandpa's village.

هو والد رامي وملك. كان يقرأ صحيفة ودعا أطفاله لرؤية القصة فيها. لقد كان متحمسًا لأن علماء الآثار وجدوا شيئًا مدهشًا بالقرب من قرية الجدة والجد.



She is Ramy and Malak's mother. She likes walking in the natural trail in Grandma and Grandpa's village. She has some binoculars to see the amazing birds in the natural trail.

هي والدة رامي وملك. تحب المشي في المسار الطبيعي في قرية الجدة والجد. لديها نظارات مكبرة لرؤية الطيور المذهلة في المسار الطبيعي.



He lives with Grandma in the village. He loves seeing his grandchildren. He encourages the family to see the beautiful things in the area.

هو يعيش مع الجدة في القرية. ويحب رؤية أحفاده. هويشجع الأسرة على رؤية الأشياء الجميلة في المنطقة.



She lives with Grandpa in the village. She loves her grandchildren. She prepared feteer and mint tea for them.

هي تعيش مع الجد في القرية . وتحب أحفادها . لقد حَضَّرَت لهم الفطير وشاي النعناع.



He is Malak's brother. He thinks that the skeleton of the dinosaur is scary. He thinks that being an archaeologist is an interesting job. He found some bones in the natural trail.

هو شقيق ملك. يعتقد أن الهيكل العظمي للديناصور مخيف. يعتقد أن كونك عالم آثار هو عمل مثير للاهتمام. لقد وجد بعض العظام في المسار الطبيعي.



Malak

She is Ramy's sister. She thinks that the dinosaur skeleton is very old and awesome. She enjoyed seeing animals in the natural trail because she loves animals very much.

هي أخت رامي. إنها تعتقد أن الهيكل العظمي للديناصور قديم جدًا ورائع. لقد استمتعت برؤية الحيوانات في المسار الطبيعي لأنها تحب الحيوانات جدًا.



Uncle Youssef

He is Ramy and Malak's uncle. He is an archaeologist. He was in the group of archaeologists who found the skeleton of a dinosaur. He was very interested in the rocks that Ramy found.

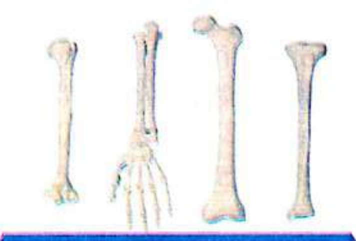
هو عم رامي وملك. إنه عالم آثار. كان ضمن مجموعة علماء الآثار الذين وجدوا الهيكل العظمي لديناصور. كان مهتمًا جدًا بالصخور التي وجدها رامي.

Picture Dictionary القاموس المصور



dinosaur ديناصور

Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.



bones عظام

Our body has many bones to help us stand up.



skeleton هيكل عظمي

Fish and other animals have a skeleton made of bones inside their bodies.



tracks آثار أقدام - مسارات

Animals" feet leave tracks on the ground where they walked.



binoculars نظارات مكبرة

She likes looking at things in the distance with her binoculars.



ibex تيس الجبل

An ibex is a type of desert animal like a gazelle.



archaeologist عالم آثار

An archaeologist is someone who digs underground to find objects from many years ago and studies them.



archaeological dig حفر أثري

An archaeological dig is when people work together to find something under the ground.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

yard	ساحة - فناء	backpacks	حقائب السفر
suddenly	فجأة	the past	الماضي
newspaper	صحيفة	adventure	مغامرة
inside	في الداخل	desert	صحراء
village	قرية	nature trail	مسار طبيعي
nature	الطبيعة	grandchildren	الأحفاد
area	منطقة	scarves	وشاحات
sunglasses	نظارات شمسية	minute	دقيقة
strange shapes	أشكال غريبة	photo	صورة
rocks	صخور	photographs	صور فوتوغرافية
map	خريطة	certainly	بالتأكيد
climate change	تغيير المناخ	rain	مطر
wind	رياح	planet	كوكب
the surface	السطح	trip	رحلة

Animals حيوانات

rare animals	حيوانات نادرة	dorcas gazelle	غزال دوركاس
sheep	خراف	sand cat	قط الرمال
camels	جِمال	fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك

Unit 12

Plants نباتات

cactus plants	نباتات الصبار
palm trees	أشجار النخيل

Foods & Drinks طعام ومشروبات

dinner	وجبة العشاء	snacks	وجبات خفيفة
feteer	فطير	mint tea	شاي نعناع

Adjectives صفات

scary	مخيف	warm	دافئ
excited	متحمس	perfect	رائع
excellent	ممتاز	very old	قديم جدًا
ancient	قديم - عتيق	disappointed	محبط
important	هام	fascinating	جذاب
hard	صعب	delicious	لذيذ

Verbs أفعال

prepare	يُحضِّر	look like	يشبه
wear	يرتدي	meet	يقابل
stop	يتوقف	show	يعرض
go back	يعود	find	يجد
dig	يحفر	blow	تهب
get ready	يستعد	look for	يبحث عن
notice	يلاحظ	discover	يكتشف
exist	يتواجد	call	يُنادي

Sentences & Expressions جمل وتعبيرات

well done	أحسنت	a long time	وقت طويل
millions of years	ملايين السنين	under the ground	تحت الأرض
in fact	في الحقيقة	along the trail	علي طول المسار



Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house.
"Hey kids, come and see this story in the newspaper!"
The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something amazing near Grandma and Grandpa's village."
"What is it, Dad?" asks Ramy. "It looks scary!"
Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the skeleton of a dinosaur. A group of archaeologists found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

رامي ومَلَك يلعبان في فناء المنزل. وفجأة يناديهما والدهما من المنزل.
"يا أولاد، تعاليا وشاهدا هذه القصة المكتوبة في الصحيفة!"
يركض الطفلان إلى الداخل ليشاهدا القصة. يقول الأب: "انظرا. لقد وجدوا شيئًا مذهلًا بالقرب من قرية جدكما وجدتكما".
يسأل رامي قائلًا: "ما هذا يا أبي؟ إنه يبدو مخيفًا!"
يقول الأب: "لا يا رامي، إنه ليس مخيفًا على الإطلاق. إنه هيكل عظمي لديناصور. عثر عليه مجموعة من علماء الآثار. وعمك يوسف واحد من هؤلاء العلماء الذين عثروا عليه!"



"That's awesome, Dad!" says Malak.
"The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?"
"Yes, that's right, Malak." says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!"
"Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really interesting job, hasn't he?" says Ramy.
"Yes, he has. And his work is important too. It helps us learn about the past." says Dad.

تقول مَلَك: "هذا رائع يا أبي! إن الهيكل العظمي للديناصور قديم للغاية، أليس كذلك؟"
يقول الأب: "أجل، هذا صحيح يا مَلَك. عمره حوالي 98 مليون سنة!"
يقول رامي: "يا للروعة! العم يوسف يعمل في وظيفة ممتعة جدًا، أليس كذلك؟"
يقول الأب: "أجل، هو كذلك. وعمله مهم أيضًا. فعمله يساعدنا في التعرّف على الماضي."





Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner.
Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?"
Ramy says, "That's a great idea, Dad. It would be an adventure to go into the desert!"
Mom says, "There's a beautiful **nature trail** there. Why don't we walk that together?"
"Oh yes please, Mom! I love nature." says Malak.

في وقت لاحق من مساء ذلك اليوم، يتناول رامي وعائلته العشاء.

يقول الأب: "هل تريدان الذهاب إلى هناك في المرة القادمة التي نذهب فيها إلى منزل جدتكما؟"

يقول رامي: "هذه فكرة رائعة يا أبي. سيكون التعمُّق في الصحراء بمثابة مغامرة!"

تقول الأم: "يوجد درب طبيعي جميل هناك. لماذا لا نسير ذلك الدرب معًا؟"

تقول مَلَك: "أوه أجل من فضلك يا أمي! أنا أحب الطبيعة."

"Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so excited to see her grandchildren.
"I have prepared your favorite things – feteer and mint tea! Come inside and eat."
"Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you."
"It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail."
"Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

تنادي الجدة قائلة: "رامي! مَلَك!" إنها متحمسة للغاية لرؤية حفيديْها.

"لقد أعددتُ أشياءكما المفضلة - فطير وشاي النعناع! تعالا إلى الداخل وتناولا الطعام"

يقول الجد للأم والأب: "مرحبًا، من الرائع رؤيتكما."

يقول الأب: "نحن سعيدون لوجودنا هنا، نريد أن نأخذ الأطفال لنسير في درب طبيعي غدًا."

يقول الجد: "ممتاز، يوجد الكثير لتروه في منطقتنا. إنه مكان جميل."






The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses. They have snacks and water in their backpacks. Mom has some binoculars too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of rare animals.

جاء صباح اليوم التالي والجميع سعداء. إنهم مستعدون للسير في الدرب الطبيعي. إنهم يرتدون قبعاتٍ وأوشحةٍ ونظاراتٍ شمسية. ولديهم وجبات خفيفة ومياه في حقائب الظهر الخاصة بهم. ومع الأم بعض النظارات المعظّمة أيضًا. إنها تريد أن تشاهد الطيور المذهلة التي تعيش هنا. إنهم في جزء جميل من مصر يحتوي على العديد من أنواع الحيوانات النادرة.



It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a perfect day for walking. There are cactus plants and palm trees and they see sheep and some camels. Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone," she says. "If we are quiet, we could see a fennec fox, or a dorcas gazelle, or maybe a sand cat."
The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals' tracks in the sand.
Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

إنه يوم جميل ودافئ، وليس شديد الحرارة. إنه يوم مثالي للمشي. يوجد نباتات صبار وأشجار نخيل، ويرَون بعض الأغنام والجمال.

تشعر ملك بسعادة بالغة لأنها تحب الحيوانات. تقول: "أرجوكم جميعًا، امشوا بهدوء وبحذر. إذا مشينا بهدوء، يمكننا أن نرى ثعلب فنك، أو غزال دوركاس، أو ربما قط رمال."

تواصل العائلة سيرها في الدرب. ويرى رامي آثار أقدام حيوانات في الرمال.

يلتقط الأب صورة لثعلب فنك. وترى الأم العديد من الطيور الجميلة. والجميع مستمتعون بالسير في الدرب.

Then Mom says, "Hey everyone, I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?"
She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them.
"Look!" he says. "What are these things in the rocks, Dad?"
"I don't know," says Dad. "They look like bones ..."
"We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton." says Mom. "Maybe they are dinosaur bones!"
Ramy is very excited. "Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says. "Dad, can we call him?"
"Yes, of course." says Dad.
Uncle Youssef is very interested in the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some photographs of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

ثم تقول الأم: "يوجد شيء في حذائي. هل يمكننا التوقف لدقيقة؟"
تجلس الأم. ويشرب الآخرون بعض الماء وينتظرون. ينظر رامي إلى الصخور الموجودة بالقرب من الدرب. فيرى بعض الأشكال الغريبة بداخلها.
ويقول: "انظروا! ما هذه الأشياء الموجودة في الصخور يا أبي؟"
يقول الأب: "لا أعلم. تبدو مثل العظام ..."
فتقول الأم: "نحن قريبون جدًا من المكان الذي عثروا فيه على الهيكل العظمي للديناصور. ربما تكون عظام ديناصور!"
يتحمس رامي للغاية ويقول: "لنسأل العم يوسف! هل يمكننا الاتصال به يا أبي؟"
فيقول الأب: "أجل بالطبع."
يهتمّ العم يوسف جدًا بالصخور التي وجدها رامي، ويطلب من الأب التقاط بعض الصور لها وأن يلتقيه في منزل الجدة لتناول العشاء.



Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the map. Uncle Youssef asks the family to go back there with him the next day.

في وقت لاحق من مساء ذلك اليوم، يعرض الأب الصور على العم يوسف ويريه رامي مكانها على الخريطة. يطلب العم يوسف من العائلة العودة معه إلى هناك في اليوم التالي.



The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully.
"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that doesn't exist now."
Ramy is disappointed because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things – just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?"
"Yes please, Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

في اليوم التالي، يعودون للسير في الدرب ويجدون صخور رامي، وينظر إليها العم يوسف بعناية. يقول العم يوسف: "إن العظام الموجودة في الصخور ليست عظام ديناصور. لكن عمرها قديم بالتأكيد. ربما هي لنوع قديم غير موجود الآن من حيوانات الوعل (تيس الجبل)." يصاب رامي بخيبة أمل لأن العظام ليست عظام ديناصور. لكن العم يوسف يقول: "أحسنت في العثور عليها يا رامي! من المهم أن نأخذ وقتًا في النظر إلى العالم من حولنا ومشاهدة الأشياء - تمامًا كعالِم الآثار! والآن، هل ترغبون جميعًا في المجيء لمكان الحفر ورؤية الهيكل العظمي للديناصور الذي اكتشفته؟"
فيقول رامي وملك: "أجل من فضلك يا عمي يوسف!"



"Here it is,"says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"
"Wow!" says Ramy. "It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."
"And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time."says Malak. "In fact, we found the skeleton because of climate change." says Uncle Youssef.
"Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is dry and the wind can blow away the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the surface. That's good for archaeologists but bad for the planet."

يقول العم يوسف: "ها هو ذا. ما رأيكم؟"
يقول رامي: "يا للروعة. إنه لأمر مدهش أن أفكر في أنه عاش قبل ملايين السنين."
تقول ملك: "وأن عظامه تلك كانت تحت الأرض لفترة طويلة من الزمن."
يقول العم يوسف:" في الواقع، وجدنا الهيكل العظمي بسبب تغير المناخ. "الآن أصبحت الأمطار شحيحة وقلّت النباتات. وهذا معناه أن الأرض جافة ويمكن للرياح أن تجرف الرمال. والأشياء التي كانت تحت سطح الأرض تظهر على سطحها. وهذا شيء جيد بالنسبة لعلماء الآثار ولكنه سيء للكوكب."

Later everyone is getting ready to go home.
"Thanks for showing us the dinosaur, Uncle Youssef," says Ramy" "It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!"
"It's fascinating work, but it's hard," says Uncle Youssef, "Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything."
"We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak.
"Thanks for all the delicious food." says Mom." It was lovely to see you both again."
"Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon." says Grandma.

يستعد الجميع في وقت لاحق للعودة إلى المنزل.
يقول رامي: "شكرًا لأنك جعلتنا نرى الديناصور يا عمي يوسف، لقد كان ذلك ممتعًا للغاية. أتمنى أن أصبح عالم آثار. إنها وظيفة رائعة!"
يقول العم يوسف: "إنها وظيفة رائعة، لكنها صعبة. أحيانًا نبحث لسنوات ولا نجد أي شيء".
تقول ملك: "يمكننا المساعدة إذا كنت تبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى!"
تقول الأم: "شكرًا على كل الطعام اللذيذ. كان من الرائع رؤيتكما مرة أخرى".
تقول الجدة: "شكرًا يا عزيزتي. تعالوا لزيارتنا قريبًا".



"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.
"Yes, I thought it was fantastic." says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.
"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.
Ramy says, I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our environment."
"Yes, that is how you can discover interesting things." adds Malak.
"You're right, kids." says Dad. "Well done!"

تسأل الأم في السيارة: "إذن، هل استمتعتما برحلتنا؟"
يقول رامي: "نعم، أعتقد أنها كانت رحلة رائعة." وتقول ملك: "وأنا أيضًا!"
يسأل الأب: "ماذا تعتقدان أنكما تعلمتما منها؟"
يقول رامي: لقد تعلمتُ أهمية النظر حولنا بعناية وملاحظة الأشياء الموجودة في بيئتنا."
وتضيف ملك: "نعم، هذه هي الطريقة التي يمكننا من خلالها اكتشاف أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام." يقول الأب: "أنتما محقان يا أولاد. أحسنتما!"

Questions with their model answers

1 Label the people with the names in the box:

Mom - Ramy - Grandma - Grandpa - Dad - Malak - Uncle Youssef

1. 
....

2. 
....

3. 
....

4. 
....

5. 
....

6. 
....

7. 
....

2 Read. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

. Mom sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper. ☐

2. The dinosaur skeleton is near their house. ☐

3. Uncle Youssef is a farmer. ☐

4. Mom loves looking at birds. ☐

. Ramy finds dinosaur bones. ☐

. They go to Uncle Youssef"s office. ☐

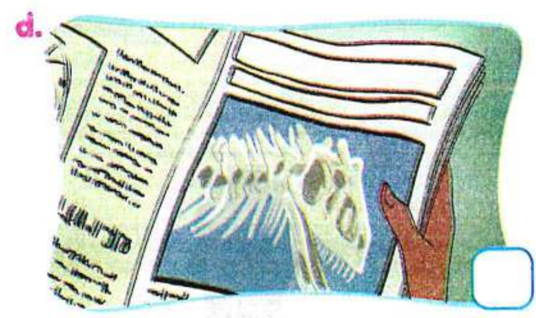
▸ Events in the story:

3 Look and number in order:

a. 

b. 

c. 

d. 

e. 

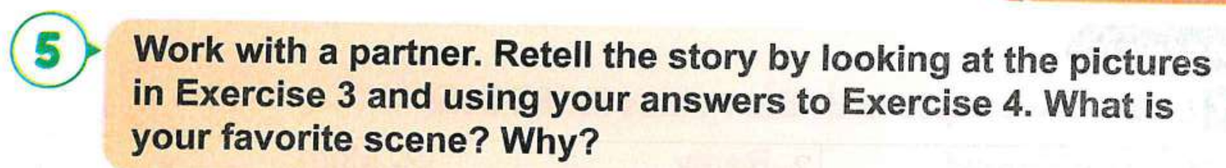
f. 

4 Read and match to make sentences:

1. Dad reads a story
2. The children's grandparents
3. Ramy finds old bones
4. Uncle Youssef invites
5. Ramy wants to be

a. live near the archaeological dig.
b. the family to the dig.
c. about a dinosaur in the newspaper.
d. an archaeologist in the future.
e. in some rocks near the trail.





5 **Work with a partner. Retell the story by looking at the pictures in Exercise 3 and using your answers to Exercise 4. What is your favorite scene? Why?**

6 **Read and complete the story summary with the words in the box:**

ibex - rocks - next - trail - invites - dig - fun - Dad - skeleton - Grandma

At home, ❶ .... reads a newspaper story about a dinosaur ❷ .... He's very excited because Uncle Youssef is working on the archaeological ❸ .... At dinnertime, he suggests to the family that they see the skeleton when they visit their ❹ .... The family loves the idea and they travel to see them the ❺ .... day. Grandma and Grandpa are very happy to see them. The family go on a nature ❻ .... and see lots of beautiful animals and birds. Ramy sees some bones in the ❼ .... and he thinks they are dinosaur bones. Uncle Youssef checks the rocks and says they are not dinosaur bones, but probably from an ❽ .... He says it is a very good thing that Ramy is taking time to notice things on the trail. He also ❾ .... them to go to his archaeological dig, which they think is a lot of ❿ ....

7 **Answer the following questions:**

1. Why is it important to look carefully at the world around you?
   ▶ ....
2. What information can archaeology give us?
   ▶ ....
3. Why is archaeology an important activity in Egypt?
   ▶ ....
4. Why are dinosaur skeletons interesting? What can they tell us?
   ▶ ....



Unit 12

Answers

1 Label the people with the names in the box:

1- Uncle Youssef	2- Ramy	3- Mom
4- Malak	5- Dad	6- Grandma
7- Grandpa		

2 Read. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

1. False Mom didn't see the story in the newspaper, Dad did.
2. False The dinosaur skeleton is near their grandparent's house.
3. False Uncle Youssef is an archaeologist.
4. True
5. False Ramy finds bones which might have belonged to an ancient ibex.
6. False They go to Uncle Youssef's archaeological dig.

3 Look and number in order:

1. d	2. f	3. b	4. e	5. a	6. c

4 Read and match to make sentences:

1. c	2. a	3. e	4. b	5. d

5 Work with a partner. Retell the story by looking at the pictures in Exercise 3 and using your answers to Exercise 4. What is your favorite scene? Why?

(يجيب عنه الطالب)

6 Read and complete the story summary with the words in the box:

1- Dad	2- skeleton	3- dig	4- grandma
5- next	6- trail	7- rocks	8- ibex
9- invites	10- fun		

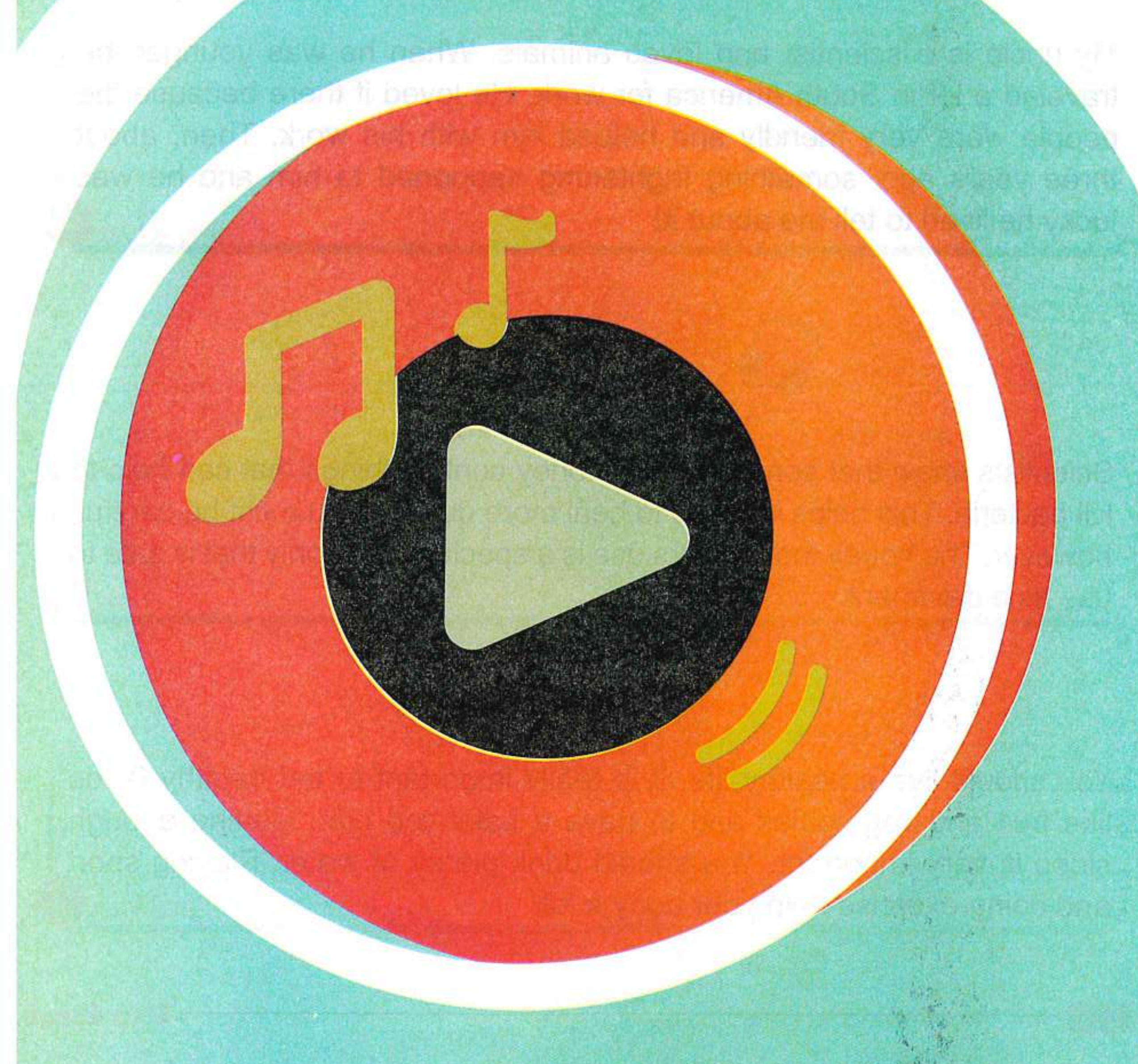
7 Answer the following questions:

1. To notice and discover interesting things around the environment.
2. Archaeology can give us information about the past.
3. Because it helps us to discover the history of Ancient Egyptians and it gives us information about their culture, art, civilization and monuments.
4. Because they are very old and rare to find. They can tell us secrets about animals that lived millions of years ago.

Part (2)

Listening

Listening Scripts





Listening Connect (5)



Test 1

Hello! I'm Fareeda. I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals. *Question 1*



Test 2

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something frightening happened to him and he was lucky he lived to tell me about it! *Question 1*



Test 3

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. *Question 1*



Test 4

You should live a healthy life. It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. Getting enough sleep is very important. You should drink plenty of water. Playing sport and doing exercise help your body a lot. *Question 1*



Test 5

Last week, I went to the new wildlife park. I saw the panda, the lion, the kangaroo and the parrot. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark!

Question 1

Test 6

My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong. I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

Question 1



Test 7

Amir went to the new wildlife park yesterday. It was awesome! He saw so many animals. He couldn't go near the lions. He stayed in the car. But he could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch - it's so sweet! He saw lots of birds, but his favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! He couldn't see the bats. They were all hiding and he couldn't see them in the dark!

Question 1



Test 8

I'm Paulo. I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home – a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old buildings. Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions. The library is amazing!

Question 1



Test 9

London is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace. *Question 1*

Unit 11



Listening Script

Test 10

Yesterday was a fantastic day. In the morning, we went to the beach to go snorkeling. We swam with the turtles and brightly-colored fish! Today we can race through the sand dunes in beach buggies! It's fun and fast! We spent a relaxed day shopping and wandering through the markets. *Question 1*



Test 11

Reem went for a trip to France. She saw some famous sights, like the Louvre and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. She tried to speak French, but she couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when she spoke English, they understood her! At the end of the day, she went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day *Question 1*

Review on Units 10 11



Listening Script

Test 12

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. *Question 1*







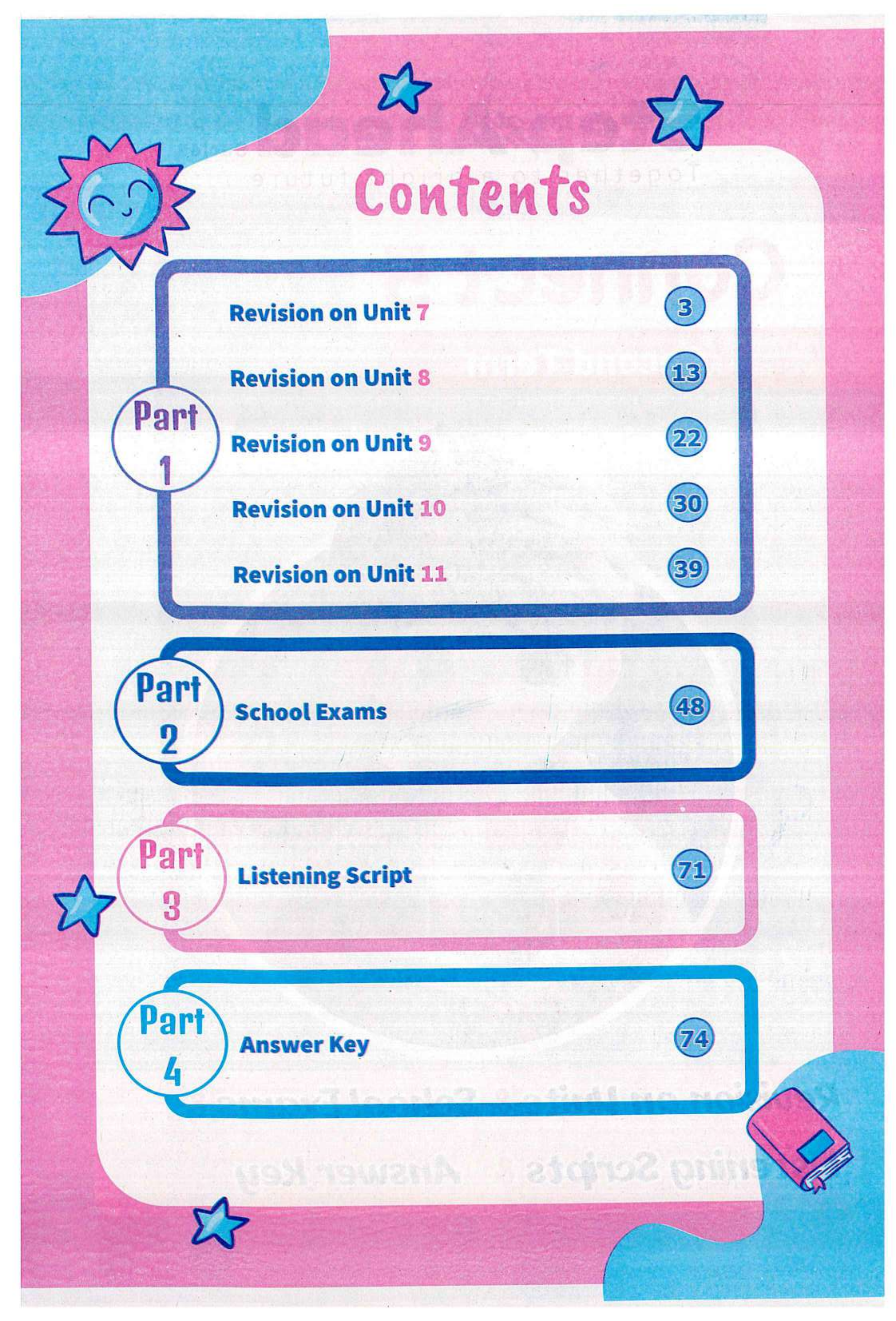
2025
Second Term



Units Revision & School Exams & Answer Key

CONNECT

By a group of specialists



Contents

Revision on Unit 7

Vocabulary

closet	خزانة - دولاب	gate	بوابة
oven	فرن	furniture	أثاث
cushion	وسادة - مخدة	pots	أواني
apartment	شقة	blogging	تدوين
elevator	مِصعد	topic	موضوع
armchair	كرسي بمساند	ecological	بيئي
balcony	شُرفة	upside down	رأسًا على عقب - مقلوب
living room	حجرة المعيشة	relax	يسترخي
sculpture	قطعة منحوتة (تمثال)	papyrus	نبات البردي
local	محلّي	unusual	غير معتاد
ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	landscape	منظر طبيعي
mud bricks	طوب لبن	architect	مهندس معماري
flat roofs	أسقف مسطحة	opinion	رأي
reed mat	حصير من البوص	crops	محاصيل زراعية

Homes in Egypt



Language

البادئة "-un" تعطي معنى "not"

unhappy = not happy = غير سعيد

The past simple tense

- زمن الماضي البسيط: التصريف الثاني للفعل.
- يعبر عن أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

• He played football yesterday.

كلمات دالة:

Yesterday - ago - in the past - last ..(week)..

- النفي باستخدام didn't ثم الفعل في المصدر.

• He didn't help me.

Phonics - Math



- "oo" يمكن أن تنطق /u:/ كما في كلمة: spoon
- ويمكن أن ننطقها، /ʊ/ كما في كلمة: good
- ويمكن أن تنطق /ʌ/ كما في كلمة: blood

Decimals الأعداد العشرية

العدد العشري هو العدد غير الصحيح

- يمكن تقريب الرقم العشري إلى أقرب رقم صحيح وهذا يجعل الأرقام أقصر و أسهل في الاستخدام.
- لو كان الرقم بعد العلامة العشرية (٥) فما فوق، نقوم بتقريب الرقم العشري إلى الرقم الصحيح الأكبر.

13.95 becomes 14.

- لو كان الرقم بعد العلامة العشرية أقل من (٥)، نقوم بتقريب الرقم العشري إلى الرقم الصحيح الأصغر.

134.3 becomes 134.

Revision on Unit 7

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

share - view - space - kitchen

In our new apartment, the kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in. There's more ❶ .... in the living room so we can have a bigger television. There are three bedrooms. I ❷ .... a room with my sister, Amira. And we have two bathrooms. I love our new apartment. I like the ❸ .... from the balcony, too.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

local - unsafe - family - villager

My uncle was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A ❶ .... villager told him where there was a howler monkey ❷ .... nearby and he was very happy. But it could be ❸ .... because they were going to have a lot of rain.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

unusual - architect - topic - places

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about ❶ .... homes. This ❷ .... is very interesting for me because my mom's an ❸ ...., so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. It's really awesome!

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. uncle - scientist - My - a - is.
▶ ....
2. in - He - for work - traveled - a lot - South America.
▶ ....
3. was - monkeys - interested - He - very - in.
▶ ....
4. came - They - airplane - by - here.
▶ ....
5. much - in - It's - cook - easier - to.
▶ ....
6. like - the - What - look - houses - did?
▶ .... ?
7. about - blogging - like - different - I - things.
▶ ....
8. made - their - Mud - homes - cool - bricks.
▶ ....
9. moved - apartment - a - closer - We - to.
▶ ....
10. a room - I - sister - with - share - my.
▶ ....
11. this - town - I - of - part - like.
▶ ....
12. like - unusual - Local - this - people - house.
▶ ....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. fareeda and dina are friends
▶ ....
2. i m from egypt
▶ ....
3. tom is from the usa
▶ ....

4. his birthday is in april

▶ ....

5. it s cold in the uk in january

▶ ....

6. the child is happy now.

▶ ....

7. is jack from australia

▶ ....

8. can ayman use your camera

▶ ....

9. he has a computer a tv and a laptop

▶ ....

10. are you free on tuesday

▶ ....

6 Read the text and answer the questions:

In the past, villages were just groups of poor houses. There was no electricity or clean water. Boys and girls didn't go to schools because school were in towns and cities only. Sick people were carried to hospitals far from their villages. Women farmers washed the family clothes in the small canals where animals washed, too. There were few houses where rich people lived. Now, the picture is different. All houses are well built and people use electricity. In every village, there's at least one school and one hospital. A farmer's life has become better and more comfortable.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. There's at least one (best - hotel - museum - hospital) in every village.

2. Life in villages now is (more boring - worse - better) than in the past.

B Answer these questions:

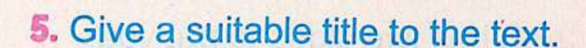
3. Why didn't boys and girls in villages go to school in the past?

▶ ....

4. How has farmer's life changed?

▶ ....

5. Give a suitable title to the text.



▶ ....

7 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"The furniture in my apartment"

Ideas for help:
- What are the pieces of furniture?
- Where are they in each room?

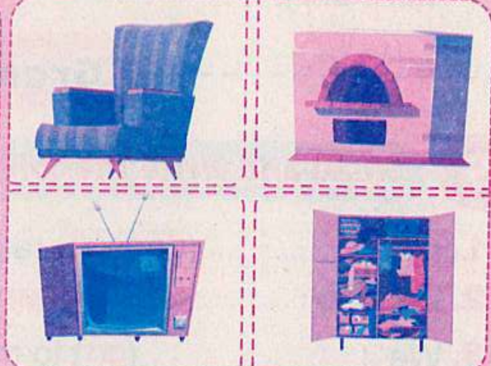
....

....

....

....

....



8 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. I have a (armchair - cushion - bed - closet) full of beautiful clothes.
2. We bake the bread in a hot (armchair - bed - closet - oven) for ten minutes.
3. She lives in a small (apartment - garden - bathroom - kitchen) on the third floor.
4. We'll have to take the (taxi - elevator - truck - train) to go to the fifth floor.
5. Many farmers (water - grow - plant - keep) cows to get milk and meat.
6. A/An (builder - teacher - architect - worker) is someone whose job is to design buildings.
7. I just want to sit down and (relax - play - jump - wear) after a long day of hard work.
8. Farmers in Egypt (keep - grow - clean - raise) fruit and vegetables.
9. There is a lot of (furniture - toys - tools - armchair) like beds, chairs and desks in our apartment.
10. Does your flat have a (bathroom - balcony - kitchen - garden) to look at the street?

11. The (bed - couch - armchair - cupboard) has two sides to put your arms on.
12. Mom always washes (clothes - vegetable - carpets - pots) after each meal.
13. I put my clothes in the (cushion - closet - tools - oven).
14. You can make the cake in the (cupboard - closet - bed - oven).
15. Ali lives on the 10th floor, so he uses the (elevator - basket - cushion - furniture).

Grammar Revision

9 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. It .... (doesn't) rain yesterday.
2. Hend is .... (happy). She didn't catch the school bus.
3. We .... (go) to my aunt's house at the beach last summer.
4. He didn't .... (traveled) all over Egypt.
5. It's very .... (safe) for the children to use a knife alone.
6. .... (In) the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it.
7. When he .... (is) younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work.
8. .... (On) the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet.
9. She's very .... (friendly) - she never smiles or tries to make friends.
10. I .... (visit) her house when I was five.
11. This chair is very .... (comfortable). I don't like it.
12. He didn't .... (ate) Om Ali in Tanta.
13. The people .... (was) very friendly and helped him.
14. I .... (meet) her in Zagazig two years ago.
15. .... (In) the left, there is my sister's bed.
16. Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be .... (safe).
17. .... (In) the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.
18. What do you think Ancient Egyptian homes .... (be) like?

19. What did people .... (used) to build their homes?

20. Go straight .... (in). The club is on the left.

10 Choose the correct answer: (The prefix "un" - Prepositions)

1. I'm glad dad didn't buy that armchair. It was really (comfortable - uncomfortable - unfriendly - friendly).
2. She's very (unsafe - happy - safe - unhappy) because she lost her homework.
3. We all thought the new girl was (uncomfortable - unfriendly - friendly - comfortable) but actually she just didn't talk much.
4. He was a (fear - fair - unfair - unfriendly) king. Everybody loved him.
5. They are (lucky - luckily - fair - unlucky). They played well, but they didn't win the match.
6. That electrical wire looks very (unsafe - safe - save - unfair). Don't touch it!
7. There is a bed (on - at - in - to) the right.
8. The armchair is (at - to - in - on) the middle of the room.
9. The kitchen is (in - on - to - at) the left.
10. The carpet is in the middle (of - off - with - at) the room.

11 Choose the correct answer: (Past simple)

1. He (are - is - was - were) a student ten years ago.
2. We (are - is - was - were) late for school yesterday.
3. It (was - were - are - is) raining last night.
4. I (am - was - were - is) happy with my grades last week.
5. They (are - was - were - is) interested in watching yesterday's match.
6. She (were - are - is - was) ready for her friend's party last Saturday.
7. You (is - was - are - were) excellent in the science class yesterday.
8. Adel (fall - feel - fell - fallen) off his bicycle yesterday.
9. Yesterday, I (see - saw - seen - sees) a bird singing.
10. The player (kicked - kicks - kick - brick) the ball and scored a goal.
11. They (aren't - wasn't - weren't - didn't) have a bike when they were young.
12. I (give - given - gave - gives) my friend a present on his birthday last

week.

13. They (wasn't - weren't - aren't - didn't) at school last Friday.
14. He didn't (break - broke - breaks - broken) the window yesterday.
15. Where did your uncle (travels - travel - traveled - traveling) last week?
16. Did you (puts - is put - put - putting) the food in the fridge?
17. What (happens - happened - happen - happening) last night?
18. My little brother (break - breaks - broke - broken) his arm yesterday.
19. The cat didn't (catching - catch - caught - catches) the mouse.
20. What did you (say - saying - said - says) to your mother when you came late?
21. They (go - are going - goes - went) to the park yesterday.
22. Soha (cleans - cleaned - will clean - cleaning) her room last evening.
23. My father (giving - gives - gave - give) me his pen because I lost mine.
24. I didn't (write - written - writes - wrote) a letter to my friend yesterday.
25. Her father (drives - drove - driven - drive) them to Alex last week.
26. They (lives - lived - are living - is lived) in Alexandria five years ago.
27. What did she (buying - buys - buy - bought) yesterday?
28. Mona (helps - is helping - helped - helping) her mother last Friday.
29. We all (watches - watch - watching - watched) the match last evening.
30. I (do - didn't - did - doing) my homework last evening.

Unit 7 Test 1

Total 30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (72) آخر الكتاب.

1. In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the (sea - Nile - lake - pond).
2. Ancient Egyptians used (mud - water - boats - plants) from the river to make bricks for their houses
3. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes (hot - cold - cool - warm).
4. The mud bricks made very strong (floors - roofs - gardens - walls).

2 Choose the correct answer: (1.5Ms)

1. I wash my face and brush my teeth in the (bathroom - kitchen - bedroom - balcony).
2. When he fell off his bike, he was very (friendly - unfriendly - happy - unhappy).
3. My school has five (roofs - floors - gates - walls). It's a tall building.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

countryside - garden - houses - floors

In cities, people live very close together, and so they build their houses taller, with many ❶ .... This saves space so they can build more houses. City houses join together. In the ❷ ...., houses usually only have one floor, and they also have a ❸ .... Farmers grow vegetables and keep chickens there.

4 Read the text then answer the questions: (7Ms)

The school is the place where students learn. So students have to follow their school rules. The school teaches students how to be good people. Students learn how to be tidy and polite. They spend a very interesting time in school. Also, they can make friends there. A good school should be clean and tidy.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "clean" is (dirty - unsafe - untidy - busy).
2. Students spend (interesting - boring - sad - unlucky) time at school.

B Answer these questions:

3. What do students have to follow at school?

▶ ....

4. What does school teach students?

▶ ....

5. Summarize the text in two sentences.

▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. used - to - papyrus - They - the windows - cover.

▶ ....

2. or - a house - you - an apartment - Do - live in?

▶ .... ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets: (4Ms)

1. I don't like that bed - it's very .... (comfortable).

2. Yesterday, my grandma .... (come) to visit us.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (4Ms)

1. how did the Egyptians build their homes in the past

▶ ....

2. a good school should be clean and tidy

▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"A book you'd like to read"

Ideas to help you: o What is it about? o Why do you want to read it?

....

....

....

....

Revision on Unit 8

Vocabulary

toothache	ألم في الأسنان	flexible	مرِن - ليّن
earache	ألم في الأذن	spear	رمح
backache	ألم في الظهر	trunk	خرطوم فيل - زلومة
headache	صداع	tusk	ناب
sore throat	التهاب حلق	tail	ذيل
hurt	يصيب - يجرح - يؤلم	bandage	ضمادة
cough	سعال - كحة	injection	حقن - حقنة
ankle	كاحل - رسغ القدم	corridor	طُرقة
stomach	معدة	pills	حبوب دواء
fresh water	ماء عذب	sunburn	لفحة شمس
salt water	ماء مالح	sunscreen	كريم واقٍ من الشمس
stream	مجرى ماء - جدول	bacteria	بكتيريا
glacier	نهر جليدي	wounds	جروح
ocean	محيط	first-aid kit	صندوق إسعافات أولية

At the doctor's



Language

"un- ir- il- im- "

- بوادئ للكلمة تعطي عكس الصفة عند إضافتها.

- irregular - illegal - impossible - unsafe

Verb to have

- He - she - it (has)
- I - you - we - they - plural (have)

- يمكن استخدام الأفعال (has - have) عند الحديث عن الأمراض.

- I have a headache



Phonics - Math

the /f/ and /v/ sounds:

/f/ sound: don't use your voice
frog - leaf
/v/ sound: use your voice
view - love

Bar chart: شريط الرسم البياني

- هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات ونتائج الاستطلاعات



Revision on Unit 8

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

careful - cold - sore - throat

I went to the club yesterday. Some of my friends didn't come. Two of my friends have a cough. The coach told us to be ❶ .... When we have a ❷ .... or a sore ❸ ...., we should stay home! For me, my back hurts. I have a backache. I hope we'll feel better tomorrow.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

balanced - sleep - represent - exercise

It is really important to eat healthy foods, like fruit and vegetables, and to have a ❶ .... diet. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health. You should do some ❷ .... every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to get enough ❸ ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

heal - sleep - wounds - kill

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat ❶ .... by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to ❷ .... bacteria. This helps wounds to ❸ .... more quickly.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

unwell - hospital - crowded - staff

In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their ❶ .... relative. This means that the ❷ .... is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the ❸ .... at this hospital do something special. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. a cough - my - Three - friends - of - have.
▶ ....
2. is - food - the most - Which - popular?
▶ .... ?
3. swimming - from - has - Amr - earache - an.
▶ ....
4. important - foods - healthy - It's - eat - to.
▶ ....
5. careful - be - The coach - to - told - us.
▶ ....
6. Nader - have - Does - headache - a?
▶ .... ?
7. do - should - You - every day - exercise - some.
▶ ....
8. about - my - worried - friends - I'm.
▶ ....
9. the - dentist - I - went - she - think - to.
▶ ....
10. healthy - do - stay - What - to - you do?
▶ .... ?

11. Dina - matter, - What - the - is?

▶ .... ?

12. to - important - It's - enough - sleep - get.

▶ ....

13. the biggest - is - The elephant - the world - in - land animal.

▶ ....

14. hospital - crowded - is - often - The.

▶ ....

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what's your favorite drink

▶ ....

2. we don't go to school on friday

▶ ....

3. this museum is called the egyptian museum

▶ ....

4. eggs cheese jam and beans are different foods

▶ ....

5. mariam dosen't have lunch at school

▶ ....

6. does adel go to restaurants with his family

▶ ....

7. i go to the club with my friend ehab on saturdays

▶ ....

8. he likes figs bananas apples and oranges

▶ ....

7 Read the following passage and then answer the questions below:

My grandpa is a farmer. He is 67 years old now. He is still strong. He goes to his farm every day. He goes to the farm on foot. He has three sons and a daughter. My father is a doctor. My uncle Samir is a policeman. My uncle Hassan is a reporter. And my aunt Amina is a librarian. We all love our grandpa. He tells us stories.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. My aunt Amina helps (farmers - ill people - all people - pupils) in her work.
2. The opposite of the underlined word "strong" is (powerful - weak - slow - old).

B Answer these questions:

3. How does the grandpa go to his farm?
▶ ....
4. How old is grandpa?
▶ ....
5. How many children does grandpa have?
▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"The hospital"

Ideas for help: important place - treat

....

....

....

....



9 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. It is important to have a balanced (drink - exercise - sleep - diet) and eat healthy food.
2. Getting enough (sleep - exercise - sport - dream) at night is very important.
3. (Spending - saving - Going - Playing) sport is important for your health.
4. We should do exercise to (drink - stay - sleep - spend) healthy.

5. We should (get - stay - come - go) enough sleep every night.
6. You should (stay - sleep - play - drink) plenty of water every day.
7. The (lake - river - ocean - pond) is bigger than the sea.
8. Abdullah is sick. He has a (backache - headache - tootahache - sore) throat and cough.
9. Liza hurts her back. She has a (backache - headache - toothache - sore throat).
10. Hazem has a terrible (toothache - backache - headache - earache). There is a pain inside his ear.
11. I have to go to the dentist. I have a (headache - earache - toothache - backache).
12. I hurt my (arm - ankle - tooth - ear) when I was running today. I can't walk.

Grammar Revision

10 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. It's .... (legal) to copy your friend's homework.
2. My sister feels .... (well). She is sick.
3. Amr .... (have) an earache from swimming.
4. It's .... (moral) to leave your friend when he needs you.
5. He is .... (responsible). I can't tell him to do that.
6. My friend Tarek .... (hurts) his ankle at football practice last night.
7. It's .... (possible) to go out now. It's raining heavily outside.
8. She feels .... (happy). She looks sad.
9. I .... (has) a backache.
10. This chair is .... (safe). Don't sit on it.
11. He is .... (fit). He should do some exercise.
12. Two of my friends .... (has) a cold.
13. It's .... (polite) to say bad words to your friend.
14. The verb buy is .... (regular).
15. My tooth .... (hurting)!

11 Add the prefix (un-, ir-, il-, or im-) to these words:

1. happy ....
2. possible ....
3. moral ....
4. polite ....
5. legal ....
6. fit ....
7. safe ....
8. responsible ....
9. well ....
10. regular ....

12 Choose the correct answer: (has - have)

1. She (had - is - has - have) a cough.
2. You (are - is - has - have) a cold. Take a tissue.
3. I (has - have - was - am) an American email friend.
4. We (are - has - have - were) two bikes.
5. He (was - has - have - is) four cousins.
6. They (are - were - have - has) a nice house with a garden.
7. Ghada (isn't - don't - wasn't - doesn't) have an earache.
8. I (doesn't - don't - am not - wasn't) have a stomachache.
9. Adam doesn't (live - has - have - is) a headache.
10. My sisters don't (are - was - has - have) a cold.
11. (Do - Does - Has - Is) he have a kite?
12. (Does - Do - Are - Were) you feel well?
13. Nahla and Reem (are - is - has - have) coughs.
14. My brother (isn't - wasn't - don't - doesn't) have a toothache.
15. Does she (have - has - was - is) a blue dress?
16. Does Ramy (is - has - have - was) free time?

Unit 8 Test 2

Total 30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (72) آخر الكتاب.

1. Some types of honey contain things that can help to (raise - kill - keep - grow) bacteria.
2. Some types of honey helps (bones - arms - wounds - hearts) to heal more quickly.

3. You must be (careful - careless - possible - illegal) when using honey as a treatment .

4. Doctors use honey that is safe to use as a (food - snack - drink - treatment).

2 Choose the correct answer: (1.5Ms)

1. I can't talk. My (stomach - back - shoulder - throat) hurts.

2. Doctors and nurses always give us medical (car - core - care - cart).

3. It's important to do (healthy - bad - unhealthy - unwell) things.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

hurt - ankle - problems - earache

Fares had a bad day at the club. That's because five of his friends didn't come to the club! His friends have ❶ .... His friend Tarek ❷ .... his ankle at football practice. And Amr has an ❸ .... from swimming. Lama wasn't there. She went to the dentist. Two of his friends have a cold.

4 Read the text then answer the questions: (7Ms)

Yara couldn't go to school last Thursday. She was very ill, so she didn't help her mother with the housework. She went to Dr Sherif's clinic. Doctor Sherif examined her. He gave her some medicine. Her friends visited her. They gave her some flowers and sweets. Yara went back to school on Monday. All her friends were happy to see her again.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Yara didn't go to school because she was (lazy - well - ill - asleep).

2. Yara went to Dr Sherif's (hospital - clinic - house - home).

B Answer these questions:

3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?

▶ ....

4. Who examined Yara?

▶ ....

5. What did the doctor give Yara?

▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. important - for - Why - water - is - your health?

▶ .... ?

2. moving - It's - your body - important - keep - to.

▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets: (4Ms)

1. It is .... (usual) to build a house upside down.

2. Amir .... (have) a stomachache.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (4Ms)

1. no my friend Nader isn't coming today.

▶ ....

2. yara didn't go to school on thursday.

▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"Having a healthy diet"

Ideas for help: to be - healthy - eat - right food - proteins - meat - fish - vitamins - vegetables - fruit - carbohydrates - fats - balance - fit

....

....

....

....

Revision on Unit 9

Vocabulary

kangaroo	كنغر	comfortable	مريح
panda	باندا	water cycle	دورة المياه
bat	خفاش	evaporation	تبخُر - تبخير
snail	حلزون	precipitation	هطول الأمطار
penguin	بطريق	groundwater	مياه جوفية
parrot	ببغاء	water vapor	بخار الماء
dolphin	دولفين	pharaoh	فرعون
trunk	جذع شجرة	scribe	كاتب
branch	فرع شجرة	taxes	ضرائب
shelter	مأوى	trader	تاجر
exhausted	منهك - متعب جدًا	artisans	حرفيّون
cool breeze	نسيم بارد	chariot	عجلة حربية
useless	عديم النفع	infographic	عرض بياني للمعلومات
ungrateful	غير ممتن - ناكر الجميل	habitat	موطن طبيعي

My favorite animal



Language

Ability (القدرة الاستطاعة)

- نعبر عن الاستطاعة في المضارع باستخدام (can – can't).

- I can play basketball.
- I can't speak Italian.
- Can you fly? ↳ No, I can't.

- نعبر عن الاستطاعة في الماضي باستخدام (could – couldn't).

- I could speak French when I lived in France.
- I couldn't take the bus so I had to walk.



Phonics - Science

/v/ and / w / sounds:

/v/ sound: press your top teeth against your bottom lip

vet - vase

/w/ sound: make a tight circle with your lips

wet - water

Water cycle:

precipitation (groundwater and rivers) → (the Sun) evaporation → (clouds) precipitation

Revision on Unit 9

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cold - parrots - penguins - repeat

When we were in the wildlife park, we couldn't go near the lions. They are very dangerous animals. My favorites birds were the ❶ .... They were so beautiful and they could talk! The ❷ .... were in a special place inside. It was ❸ ...., like a fridge. We fed them some fish!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

nuts - ungrateful - useless - comfortable

There were some travelers who were hungry. They sat under a tree. They had no food in their bags. They said that the tree was ❶ .... because it had no food for them. They were so ❷ .... They came to it feeling hot and tired. It gave them a cool, ❸ .... place to sleep.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. traveled - She - great - many - to - places.
▶ ....
2. see - birds - What - you - did?
▶ .... ?
3. unusual - about - We're - animals - talking.
▶ ....
4. lions - you - the - go - Could - near?
▶ .... ?
5. stop - tree - under - Let's - that.
▶ ....
6. project - bats - I'm - a - doing - on.
▶ ....

7. trees - important - is - Why - it - to plant?
▶ .... ?

8. nuts - on - There - branches - no - are.
▶ ....

9. to - a scribe - would - be - I - like.
▶ ....

10. can - be - How - you - ungrateful?
▶ .... ?

11. from - does - water - Where - come?
▶ .... ?

12. friendly - She's - classroom - very - in.
▶ ....

13. cannot - water - see - vapor - We.
▶ ....

14. animal - What's - favorite - your - unusual?
▶ .... ?

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. he can't speak italian
▶ ....

2. where did samy go yesterday
▶ ....

3. last monday, amir visited his uncle
▶ ....

4. where are you from tom
▶ ....

5. what's the matter with you hend
▶ ....

6. does mona have a fever
▶ ....

7. where did ramez go yesterday
▶ ....

8. lions live in africa
▶ ....



9. can I go out with my friend hazem

▶ ....

10. cairo is the capital of egypt

▶ ....

5 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. You can see wild animals in the wildlife (hospital - garden - park - playground).
2. My uncle was a great (player - writer - traveler - reader). He traveled to many great places around the world.
3. A (panda - snail - sail - bat) is big, and black and white. It lives in China. It eats bamboo.
4. A meeting point is somewhere where people (go - leave - meet - meat).
5. The (kangaroo - parrot - lion - dolphin) is very friendly. It swims in a group with its family in the ocean.
6. When something is comfortable, it's (annoying - friendly - nice - not nice) to sit on or wear.
7. A (parrot - bat - penguin - penguin) lives on ice and snow. It's black and white. It can swim, but it can't fly.
8. When someone is ungrateful, they (thank - don't thank - think - sink) others for doing something good.
9. The (dolphin - penguin - parrot - bat) is very beautiful and colorful. It lives in the rainforest.
10. A breeze is a little (storm - rain - wind - lake).
11. The (zebra - monkey - tiger - lion) lives in Africa. It's a very big cat. It is very strong.
12. The (penguin - panda - bat - parrot) flies at night. It sleeps upside down on trees.
13. When something is useless, we (should - must - can - can't) use it.
14. A (bat - penguin - snail - parrot) lives in the garden. It has a shell. It doesn't have legs or arms.
15. The trunk of the tree was very wide and it had many green (branches - roots - leaves - shades).
16. A (dolphin - lion - kangaroo - cheetah) lives in Australia. It jumps on two legs.

17. When kangaroos are little, they can sit inside their mom's (peach - pouch - pocket - packet).

18. The big tree gave (shelter - lives - leaves - roots) and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country.

Grammar Revision

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Parrots can .... (flies).
2. My cousin .... (can't) run when he was a baby.
3. .... (Can) you play the piano when you were a child?
4. I couldn't .... (took) the bus so I had to walk.
5. Last year, he .... (can't) run very quickly, but now he can.
6. My little brother .... (could) read English stories now.
7. My sister couldn't .... (plays) chess when she was five.
8. Amr .... (could) see the board, so he changed his seat.
9. I had an earache and I .... (could) hear well.
10. Pandas can't .... (flew).
11. Kangaroos .... (can't) jump very high.
12. I had a sore throat, so I .... (can) talk.

7 Choose the correct answer:

1. When I was two, I (should - can - can't - couldn't) use a computer.
2. I (couldn't - shouldn't - can - can't) read when I was one.
3. Kangaroos (can - can't - should - could) jump very high.
4. I (can - could - couldn't - shouldn't) swim when I was a baby, and everyone was amazed.
5. Ostriches (النعام) (can - can't) run very fast, but they (can - can't) fly.
6. (Should - Can - Can't - Could) you speak English when you were five?
7. Bats (can - shouldn't - could - can't) fly very fast.
8. Waleed (could - couldn't - should - can) read when he was 6. He loves reading!
9. I (can - could - couldn't - should) play a guitar at seven. My dad taught me.
10. Snails (shouldn't - couldn't - can - can't) move quickly.

11. Parrots (can - should - can't - could) fly.
12. (Can - Could - Should - Couldn't) you drive a car? ▶ No, I can't
13. In Ancient Egypt, scribes (could - couldn't - can - can't) read and write.
14. I had a sore throat, so I (should - can't - could - couldn't) talk.
15. Pandas (can - should - can't - could) ride a bike.
16. My cousin (couldn't - can't - should - can) run when he was a baby.
17. I (can - couldn't - can't - should) speak when I was one month old.
18. Amr (shouldn't - can - could - couldn't) see the board, so he moved to the front.
19. He can't (see - sea - saw - sees) the plane. It's very high in the sky.
20. Could she (make - has - made - makes) the cake alone yesterday?

8 Choose the correct answer:

1. Mr Ahmed (teaches - teacher) us science.
2. Mr Ahmed is my favorite (teaches - teacher).
3. I want to be a famous (football - footballer).
4. I like playing (football - footballer).
5. He isn't a good (climb - climber).
6. He can't (climb - climber) that small tree.
7. Ibn Battuta liked to (traveler - travel).
8. Ibn Battuta was a famous (traveler - travel).

9 Choose the correct answer:

1. I'm (interest - interested - interesting) in reading.
2. Reading stories is (interest - interested - interesting).
3. She's (bore - bored - boring) with her work.
4. Her work is (bore - bored - boring).
5. He was (surprising - surprise - surprised).
6. His aunt's gift was (surprise - surprised - surprising).
7. I was (annoy - annoyed - annoying) last night.
8. The noise in the street was (annoy - annoyed - annoying) last night.
9. I'm very (tired - tire - tiring).
10. Running is really (tiring - tire - tired).

Unit 9 Test 3



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (72) آخر الكتاب.

1. The tree was (new - small - old - little).
2. The (trunk - branch - leaf - root) of the tree was very wide.
3. The tree gave shelter and rest to hundreds of (traders - sailors - drivers - travelers).
4. The tree was near four (villages - towns - cities - countries).

2 Choose the correct answer: (1.5Ms)

1. You should take some rest when you are (delighted - pleased - happy - exhausted).
2. The sea is a (grassland - forest - habitat - desert) of lots of unusual animals.
3. Don't be (grateful - ungrateful - usual - unsafe) when someone helps you.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

bats - pouch - hiding - kangaroos

Ramez went to the new wildlife park yesterday. It was awesome! He saw so many animals. The ❶ .... were interesting. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's ❷ .... - it's so sweet! He couldn't see the bats. They were all ❸ .... and he couldn't see them in the dark!

4 Read the following passage and then answer the questions: (6 Ms)

Tigers are dangerous animals. They live in different places where there are trees and grasslands. They are found in India, China, and some parts of Africa. They hunt animals and birds. A tiger hides <u>behind</u> a tree and attacks any animals that pass by it. It jumps over them like a lion and eats them.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "behind" is (next to - over - in front of - between).

2. Tigers eat (meat - fruit - grass - plants).

B Answer these questions:

3. How do tigers hunt animals?
▶ ....

4. Where do tigers live?
▶ ....

5. Give a suitable title for the text.
▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. did - yesterday - Where - Ramez - go?
▶ .... ?

2. wildlife - wants - to talk - Amir - about..
▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets: (4Ms)

1. .... (Can) you speak when you were six months old?
2. I can't .... (speaking) Italian.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (2Ms)

1. what's Hamdy's favorite animal
▶ ....

2. parrots can't swim
▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"A visit to the zoo"

Ideas for help: last week - zoo

....
....
....
....

Revision on Unit 10

Vocabulary

museum	متحف	feasts	أعياد - ولائم
local cuisine	أطباق محلية	environment	بيئة
monuments	آثار - معالم أثرية	password	كلمة سر - كلمة مرور
artifacts	تحف أثرية	waterpark	ملاهي مائية
mint	نعناع	bridges	جُسور
originally	في الأصل - أساسًا	theaters	مسارح
tomb	مقبرة	location	موقع
hieroglyphics	كتابة هيروغليفية	famous attractions	أماكن جذب سياحي
statue	تمثال	Archaeological Center	مركز الآثار
structures	مباني	description	وصف
evidence	دليل	plenty	وفرة - كثرة
signs	علامات	shade	ظِل
symbols	رموز	square	ميدان
water carriers	حاويات مياه	tell the truth	يقول الصدق

Let's visit Egypt



Language

The Imperative صيغة الأمر

- نستخدم الأمر لنخبر شخصًا ما أن يفعل أو لا يفعل شيء ما.

• Stand up! • Don't run.

- لا تبدأ صيغة الأمر بفاعل مثل (You - She - They....)
- عند توجيه الأمر بشكل مثبت، نضع الفعل في المصدر فى أول الجملة.

• Run! Sit down.

• Open the door, please.

- عند توجيه الأمر بشكل منفي، نبدأ الجملة بـ (Don't) وبعدها الفعل في المصدر.

• Don't waste your time.

Phonics - Math



Diphthongs pronunciation:

/oʊ/ sound (go - show - wrote)

/aɪ/ sound (bite - time - right)

/ɔɪ/ sound (boy - coin - enjoy)

/eɪ/ sound (ache - make - eight)

Estimated answers الإجابات التقريبية

ليست إجابة مضبوطة تمامًا ولكنها تخمين جيد.

(It's around ... - It's about ... - It's close to...)

A kilo of grapes will be around 20 Egyptian pounds.



Revision on Unit 10

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

life - restaurant - cuisine - traditional

I'm Hanan. I've lived in Alexandria all my ❶ .... I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local ❷ .... We serve ❸ .... Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bridges - delicious - trip - restaurants

In London, there are many things to do. You can take a relaxing boat ❶ .... on the River Thames and go under the ❷ .... , All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty of different ❸ .... to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

International - history - beach - city

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the ❶ .... so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the ❷ ....! You can also visit the beautiful ❸ .... Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shopping - stores - walking - town

Hi! We're Kira and Lena. We're from a small ❶ .... in England. The ❷ .... aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria - the shopping malls! We spend ages ❸ .... around them. We like the people. They are so friendly!

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

picnics - waterpark - feed - awful

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to ❶ .... the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a ❷ .... that is always open. It's free to go in! There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family ❸ .... in the shade. This is our perfect town!

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. moved - year - I - Alexandria - to - last.
▶ ....
2. cities - exciting - one - This is - the most - of.
▶ ....
3. favorite - beach - is - My - place - the.
▶ ....
4. important - foods - healthy - It's - eat - to.
▶ ....
5. place - is - important - This - very - a.
▶ ....
6. amazing - There - some - are - treasures.
▶ ....





7. clean - the - Keep - environment.

▶ ....

8. decided - to - go - He - sleep - to.

▶ ....

9. this - for - new - Is - bike - me?

▶ .... ?

10. take - the market - I - them - will - to.

▶ ....

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. who is from aswan

▶ ....

2. there s a big station in my town

▶ ....

3. let's visit al fayoum

▶ ....

4. Where do you live ali

▶ ....

5. my grandfather lives in alexandria

▶ ....

6. i want to be a doctor like my aunt dalia

▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"New Alamein"

Ideas for help: north - international Park

....

....

....

....



9 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Friday, Mr. Fahmy drove to the Pyramids with his three children. They went very early in the morning and took some bread, cheese and beans. They took hot tea and a camera too. When they arrived, Mr. Fahmy stopped his car, and the children followed him. They saw many tourists there. The tourists rode camels and horses. They took many photographs of the Pyramids and the Sphinx. Mr. Fahmy took photographs of some tourists and promised to write to them. It was a happy day.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. There were (three - four - five - six) people in the car.
2. They were (happy - quite - sad - quiet) there.

B Answer these questions:

3. What did Mr. Fahmy and his children take with them?
▶ ....
4. What did the tourists do there?
▶ ....
5. Give a suitable title to the text.
▶ ....

10 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. There are many food (dishes - factories - museums - monuments) in Egypt.
2. You should be quiet in the (market - mall - library - restaurant) to help your friends who read.
3. We can (borrow - buy - give - sell) or read books at the library.
4. Let's (bike - back - bake - beak) a cake for my birthday!
5. Dad takes the bus at the (cupboard - seaport - airport - station) every day.
6. He knew he was (right - write - foolish - brilliant) and he was sorry.
7. Koshari is a famous meal from the Egyptian (cuisine - meal - mail - recipe).
8. Gabi didn't (recognize - entertain - draw - borrow) the road. He didn't know what to do.





9. I always go to the (shopping mall - school - bank - hotel) to buy new clothes.
10. The things that Mom buys to make a meal are (receive - recipes - ingredients - cuisines).
11. My grandpa usually tells us funny stories to (talk - walk - apologize - entertain) us.
12. Dad always drinks (cheese - mint - fruit - vegetables) tea in the afternoon.
13. In summer, I go to the (market - library - beach - peach) to swim in the sea.
14. Does the farmer (grow - glow - raise - feed) vegetables?
15. You must visit my (restaurant - museum - park - garden) to try some of the traditional Egyptian food.
16. Mom bought some fresh ingredients from the (museum - library - market - garden) in our town.

Grammar Revision

11 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. .... (Opening) the door, please.
2. .... (Sits) down.
3. My school is .... (in) the left.
4. Please .... (picked) up that trash.
5. You should go .... (street) on.
6. The station is .... (at) your right.
7. .... (Puts) the cake in the oven, please.
8. Don't .... (wasted) your time.
9. .... (Crosses) the road.
10. The museum is .... (in) your right.
11. How do you .... (getting) to school?
12. Excuse me, how do I .... (gets) to the shopping mall?
13. Always .... (keeps) quiet when you are in your school library.
14. Faten, ... (does) this exercise again, please.
15. Just .... (across) the road! The park is next to the hotel.



12 Choose the correct answer: (The imperative)

1. Please, (wrote - write - writes - writing) your answer in short sentences.
2. (Don't - Always - Doesn't - Didn't) forget to bring your swimming shorts.
3. Don't (eat - eating - ate - eats) while you're driving.
4. (Don't drive - Drives - Drive - Drove) slowly in crowded places, please.
5. (Didn't lose - Lose - Don't lose - Doesn't lose) your phone.
6. (Doesn't use - Always use - Don't use - Didn't use) your mobile phone when you're driving.
7. (Lose - Don't lose - Never losing - Doesn't lose) your book.
8. (Stop not - Stops - stops - Stop) when the traffic light is red.
9. (Not - Doesn't - Don't - Always) touch that hot pot.
10. (Doing - Don't - Do - Doesn't) the housework with your mom.
11. Don't (shouts - scouts - shouted - shout) in the library!
12. Please, study the lesson again and (don't - didn't - doesn't - do) the exercise.

13 Choose the correct answer: (Giving directions)

1. How can I get (of - at - on - to) the museum, please?
2. The park is (in - to - on - at) the left.
3. Go straight (at - in - to - on), then turn right.
4. The station is (cross - across - crossed - crossing) from the supermarket.
5. Go straight on. The hotel is (at - on - to - in) the right.
6. The market is (near - slow - far - far away). You can go on foot.
7. Excuse me, (how - who - when - where) do I get to the hospital?
8. Excuse me, (who - how - where - why) is the airport, please?

Unit 10 Test 4

Total 30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (72) آخر الكتاب.

1. Alexandria is in the (north - south - east - west) of Egypt.
2. Alexandria is a big (town - city - country - village) with lots of amazing places.

3. There's even a (restaurant - store - market - beach), so you can go swimming.

4. If you like reading, there's the great Alexandria (Museum - Beach - Library - Citadel).

2 Choose the correct answer: (1.5Ms)

1. (Museums - Factories - Hotels - Libraries) produce lots of things for us to buy.

2. (Readers - Traders - Travelers - Players) are people who buy and sell things.

3. The Pyramids are a famous (museum - temple - city - attraction) in Egypt.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

city - vacation - modern - library

My name is Paulo. I'm on ❶ .... here from Barcelona. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home - a big, modern ❷ .... near the sea. I love the mix of ❸ .... and old buildings. Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions. The library is amazing!

4 Read the following passage and then answer the questions: (6 Ms)

Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Egypt. Many people come from all over Egypt and from many parts of the world to visit it. It was built in 1961. It's a very high building with three lifts that take visitors up to the top. There, you can see the Nile, all of Cairo and Giza. When the weather is fine, you can see the Pyramids to the west and Cairo Airport to the east.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "famous" means (old - unknown - usual - popular).

2. Cairo Tower is a (low - high - small - tiny) building.

B Answer these questions:

3. What can you see from the top of Cairo Tower?
▶ ....

4. How can people reach the top of Cairo Tower?
▶ ....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. reading - book - What - you - are?
▶ .... ?

2. visit - Park - can - International - You - the.
▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets: (4Ms)

1. You'll see a bookstore .... (in) your left.
2. .... (Doesn't) eat in the library, please.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (2Ms)

1. i'm visiting Alexandria
▶ ....

2. we should keep the nile clean.
▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"A vacation to Aswan"

Ideas to help: mid-year vacation - Aswan

....

....

....

....

....

Revision on Unit 11

Vocabulary

hotel	فندق	leather shoes	حذاء جلد
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	sweater	بلوفر
ticket	تذكرة	sand	رمال
airport	مطار	crops	محاصيل زراعية
passport	جواز سفر	grains	غلال - حبوب
flight	رحلة طيران	bicycle	دراجة
theme park	مدينة ترفيهية	galabeya	جلابية
high-rise buildings	مباني عالية	reed baskets	سلال من البوص
natural resources	موارد طبيعية	diary	يوميات - مذكرات
man-made resources	موارد اصطناعية	traditional	تقليدي
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	wander (v)	يتجول
the Nile	نهر النيل	citadel	حصن - قلعة
materials	مواد	handicrafts	حرف يدوية
fertile banks	ضفاف خِصبة	plastic plates	أطباق بلاستيكية

Vacations



Language

Prepositions of time

in
- in the morning
- in October (months)
- in summer (seasons)

on
- on Friday (days)
- on the 2nd of May
- on the weekend

at
- at six o'clock
- at lunchtime
- at night

The adjective suffixes

-ous dangerous -ive creative



Phonics - Math

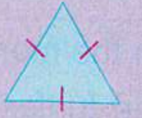
The /ð/ and /θ/ sounds:

The /θ/ sound is unvoiced:
thing - south - three

The /ð/ sound is voiced:
they - other - mother

Triangles

scalene



equilateral

right angle



isosceles

Revision on Unit 11

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- beach - flight - view - hotel

Nadia and her husband Hani are in Singapore this week. They are in a lovely ❶ .... room. They're on the 42nd floor. The ❷ .... is beautiful and they can see the ❸ .... There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

exploring - traditional - markets - tour

We arrived in Amman and checked in to our hotel in the middle of the city. Today, we enjoy a ❶ .... of Amman. We will visit the famous Amman Citadel before ❷ .... the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, we will spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful ❸ .... to buy things.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wandering - beach - dunes - race

In the morning, we went to the beach to go snorkeling. We swam with the turtles and brightly-colored fish! Today we can ❶ .... through the sand ❷ .... in beach buggies! It's fun and fast! We spent a relaxed day shopping and ❸ .... through the markets.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

picnic - grass - beautiful - agreed

Seleem wanted to go to Al-Azhar Park. Seleem's mom ❶ .... to take them to the park. She made a ❷ .... , so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green ❸ .... and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day. Marwan and Seleem played football. They had fun at the park.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

relax - city - buildings - flowers

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise ❶ .... , but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and ❷ .... The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are ❸ .... and plants from all around the world. When you are in that place, you really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. is - Mona - to - traveling - Aswan - by plane.
   ▶ ....
2. are - Nadia - Magda - Where - and - now?
   ▶ .... ?
3. her - suitcase - packing - is - she - Today, .
   ▶ ....
4. can - you - What - do - there?
   ▶ .... ?
5. playing - are - in - yard - the - They.
   ▶ ....
6. visit - like - Zambia - I - to - would.
   ▶ ....

7. for - good - The Dead Sea - skin - is - mud.

▶ ....

8. We - on - for lunch - will - stop - the way.

▶ ....

9. colorful - I - rug - a - lovely - bought.

▶ ....

10. were - India - week - They - in - last.

▶ ....

11. huge - pool - a - There's - swimming.

▶ ....

12. farmer - Farouk - in - a - Aswan - is.

▶ ....

13. city - Singapore - wonderful - is - a.

▶ ....

14. a - swim - river - could - She - in.

▶ ....

15. we - on - Yesterday, - went - trip - a boat.

▶ ....

16. will - to - fly - We - Japan - tomorrow.

▶ ....

17. traveling - plane - She's - by - Canada - to.

▶ ....

18. do - take - What - you - on vacation?

▶ .... ?

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. let's play basketball

▶ ....

2. what's your favorite food heba

▶ ....

3. i'm having a party on sunday

▶ ....

4. what vacation activities do you enjoy nagwa

▶ ....

5. i love egypt

▶ ....

6. how do you feel now adel

▶ ....

8 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. The tourists had koshari. It's a (ancient - modern - traditional - new) meal in Egypt.
2. To travel to another country, we must have a (book - magazine - passport - newspaper).
3. The trip was (bad - awesome - awful - not good)! I enjoyed it a lot.
4. I go to the (park - club - beach - ground) to swim in the sea and make sandcastles.
5. When you arrive at a hotel, you have to (want - check - change - shake) in.
6. The (hotel - airport - museum) is the place that tourists can stay in when they are on vacation.
7. We went on a (day trip - flight - tower - match) to the theme park yesterday.
8. We have a big (closet - cupboard - suitcase - oven) to put our clothes in when we travel.
9. A (really - dairy - diary - daily) is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day.
10. I go to the swimming (pool - mall - cafe - restaurant) to swim.
11. The school was over and I wanted to (do - go - have - make) on vacation.
12. They are on a business (tower - monument - trip - museum) to France.
13. There are lots of (armchairs - beds - tables - benches) in the park for people to sit on.
14. At the (airport - port - theme park - station), we took the plane to India.
15. Tourists like to (wonder - would - wander - want) through the streets of the cities they visit.

16. We should buy a (ticket - magazine - newspaper - passport) to take the metro.

17. A diary (country - history - story - entry) is a piece of writing in a diary.

18. We can race through the sand (dunes - boxes - castles - towers) in beach buggies!

Grammar Revision

9 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I was born .... (at) July 6th, 2010.
2. Our flight lands .... (in) 8 pm.
3. We play basketball .... (on) lunchtime.
4. I am having a party .... (at) my birthday.
5. I go swimming .... (in) Mondays.
6. I was born .... (at) 2010.
7. They arrived .... (on) the morning.
8. Dad is a baker. He works .... (at) the mornings.
9. We go to the club .... (in) Saturdays.
10. Does our next class start .... (on) 2 pm?
11. Grandma was born .... (at) 1962.
12. Reem's birthday is .... (in) December 4th.
13. .... (At) Wednesdays, I play football after school.
14. We are going cycling .... (in) the weekend.
15. Our school year ends .... (on) the summer.
16. Our flight lands .... (at) the evening.
17. I was surprised that it was so warm .... (at) October.
18. Amman is a really busy city .... (in) night.

10 Choose the correct answer:

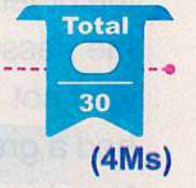
1. Dad is a baker. He works (to - at - in - on) the mornings.
2. We go to the club (in - to - on - at) Saturdays.
3. Does our next class start (on - at - to - in) 2 pm?

4. Grandma was born (at - in - on - from) 1962.
5. Reem's birthday is (in - on - at - to) December 4th.
6. We are going cycling (on - from - with - in) the weekend.
7. Is your birthday (at - in - to - on) Friday?
8. Our school year ends (in - on - at - of) the summer.
9. We're flying to Morocco (to - on - at - in) September 20th.
10. Our flight lands (at - of - in - on) the evening.
11. Did you visit Al-Azhar Park (in - on - to - at) night?
12. (On - At - In - From) Monday, we arrived in Amman.
13. The flight landed (to - at - in - on) 4 o'clock.
14. We arrived (in - from - on - at) the afternoon.
15. It was so warm (on - at - to - in) October.
16. We went back to our hotel (at - in - on - to) about midnight.

Unit 11 Test 5

Total 30

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)





نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (72) آخر الكتاب.

1. Nada is going on (picnic - vacation - trip - flight).
2. Nada is traveling to Canada by (plane - ship - boat - train).
3. Nada knows that there is often (wind - snow - storm - rain) in Canada.
4. Nada wants to go (fishing - shopping - swimming - cycling) there.

2 Choose the correct answer: (1.5Ms)

1. I'm feeling a bit (high - low - above - over) - I want to go out and change my mood.
2. Last weekend, we went to the (theme park - museum - airport - station) to go on different rides.
3. A/An (equilateral - scalene - left - right) angle triangle has one angle that measures 90°.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

playground - enjoyed - bench - felt

Ramy wanted to go to the playground with Seleem. Seleem asked his mom, and they all went together to the ❶ .... Mom sat on a ❷ .... and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. It was a fantastic place. Seleem ❸ .... very happy - now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome!

4 Read the text then answer the questions: (7Ms)

Yesterday, Mohamed went to the airport. His pen friend, Bell, was coming from London. It was Bell's first visit to Egypt. Each of them had a photo of the other. So, they could know each other. The plane was an hour late and the passengers on it were many. Mohamed looked at their faces, but Bell was not there. Mohamed was very sad. At last, he went home. There, he had a great surprise when he saw Bell waiting for him. "How were you able to come here by yourself?" Mohamed asked. Bell said with a smile, "I gave your address to the taxi driver."

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Bell came to Egypt by (plane - train - ship - bus).
2. Mohamed met Bell at (the airport - Mohamed's home - the street - station).

B Answer these questions:

3. What's Bell's nationality?

▶ ....

4. What does the underlined word "There" refer to?

▶ ....

5. Summarize the text in two sentences.

▶ ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. hours - I - museum - in - the - spent.

▶ ....?

2. Who - meet - the park - did - Marwan - at?

▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets: (4Ms)

1. Is your birthday .... (at) Friday?

2. The flight landed .... (in) 4 o'clock.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (2Ms)

1. no, I didn't visit Paris, London, Madrid or Athens

▶ ....

2. cairo is mohamed's favorite city.

▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"A visit to Al-Azhar Park"

Ideas to help: vacation - picnic - benches - grass - food - meal - play - playground

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Part 2

School Exams



ملحوظة هامة

تم تعديل بعض الأسئلة لتتماشى مع آخر تعديلات وزارة التربية والتعليم لهذا العام.



School Examples

اختبار (١) الأزهر الشريف
منطقة الإسكندرية الازهرية

نص الاستماع موجود صفـ ة (72) آخر الكتاب.



A Listening



1 Listen and choose: (4.5Ms)

1. I moved into a new (school - apartment - town).
2. We have three (living rooms - kitchens - bedrooms).
3. There are (one - two - three) bathrooms.

B Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below: (8Ms)

wildlife - birds - see - go

Hassan : Where did you ❶ .... yesterday?
Hazem : I went to the new ❷ .... park.
Reem : What did you ❸ .... there?
Hazem : I saw kangaroos, ❹ .... and lions.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (7.5Ms)

I live in a house near the mountain. I have two brothers and one sister. My father teaches math and my mother is a nurse in a big hospital. My brothers are very smart and work hard at school. My sister is a nervous girl, but she is very kind. My grandmother also lives with us. She came from China when I was two years old. She is very old. She cooks the best food. My brother and I like to go on long walks in the mountain.

A Answer the following questions:

1. Where did the grandmother come from? ▶ ....
2. Where does the mother work? ▶ ....

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The text is about (a family - neighbors - friends)
4. I live in a house near the (farms - gardens - mountain)

5. My father teaches (Arabic - English - math)

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. Kareem has a/an (stomachache - headache - earache). He can't hear well.
2. You need a (hotel - passport - tourist) to travel to another country.
3. The bed was very (unfair - unfriendly - uncomfortable). I didn't sleep very well.
4. (Do - Can - Could) you ride a bike when you were three?
5. Let's (meeting - meets - meet) on Monday at seven.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (5Ms)

1. can - Lions - very - run - fast.

▶ ....

2. be - tomorrow - Don't - late.

▶ ....

3. feel - you - do - How?

▶ ....

4. enjoying - Everyone - is - the trail.

▶ ....

5. a treatment - Honey - as - used - is.

▶ ....

أسئلة التلاميذ الذين تخلفوا عن أداء امتحان الفصل الدراسي الأول

6 Choose the correct answer: (30Ms)

1. She needs a (pitch - suit - racket) to hit the tennis ball.
2. A: What's your favorite (food - drink - sport)? B: Mango juice.
3. He has (a - an - some) apple and a pineapple.
4. Hamza is really good at (doing - do - does) jigsaws.
5. How often (do - are - is) you go to school on foot?
6. Salad and (cookies - cola - eggs) are healthy food.
7. They played football on a football (pitch - court - pool).
8. Mrs. Soha (works - work - working) in a school.
9. (Traders - Doctors - Craftsmen) looked after people who were ill.
10. Elephantine (City - Island - Town) is the oldest part of Aswan.



Exam (2) Al - Azhar Al - Sharif
Asyut Zone

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (72) آخر الكتاب.

A Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4.5Ms)

1. London is one of the most (boring - bad - exciting) cities in the world.
2. It often (rains - runs - eats) in London.
3. There are lots of (fun - foolish - rude) things to do in London.

B Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue: (8Ms)

born - great - living - old

Rana : Do you like ❶ .... here?
Salma : I love it! It's a ❷ .... apartment.
Rana : How long did you live in your ❸ .... apartment?
Salma : Twelve years, since I was ❹ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (7.5Ms)

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. You can mix honey with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

A Answer the following questions:

1. Where has honey been used?
▶ ....

2. When was honey first used by Egyptian doctors?

▶ ....

B Choose the correct word:

3. Some types of honey can (kill - eat - make) bacteria.

4. You can mix honey with (water - tea - milk) to make your cough better.

5. Don't put honey on your cut (leg - knee - arm)!

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. I (visited - visit - visits) my grandma yesterday.
2. Does she (has - have - had) a headache?
3. The bed was very (unfair - unfriendly - uncomfortable).
4. Hana puts her clothes in the (cushion - elevator - closet).
5. (Do - Can - Could) you ride a bike when you were three?

E Writing

5 Reorder the following to make correct sentences (5Ms)

1. furniture - The - Egypt - in Ancient - very - was - different.

▶ ....

2. sore - a - I - throat - have.

▶ ....

3. better - this - What's - about - apartment?

▶ .... ?

4. Ahmed - clever - a - Is - student?

▶ .... ?

5. don't - legs - arms - Snails - have - or.

▶ ....

Exam (3) Al - Azhar Al - Sharif
Al - Dakahlia Zone

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (72) آخر الكتاب.



A Listening



1 Listen and Choose the correct answer: (4.5Ms)

1. I get up at (six - seven - eight) o'clock.
2. I have my (lunch - breakfast - dinner) with my parents.
3. I like (apples - honey - oranges).

2 Read and complete the dialogue: (8Ms)

matter - have - doctor's - going

Sami : Where are you ❶ .... ?
Hani : I'm going to the ❷ ....
Sami : What's the ❸ .... ?
Hani : I ❹ .... a sore throat.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: (7.5Ms)

Hello, I'm Magdy. I'm 15 years old. My father has a farm. My brother and I play on our farm on the weekends. We have a big house on the farm.There are four rooms in our house. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother. We are a happy family.

A Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Magdy?
▶ ....
2. What does Magdy's father have?
▶ ....

B Choose the correct word:

3. There are (three - four - six) rooms in our house.

4. They are a (nice - sad - happy) family.
5. Magdy loves his (living room - bathroom - bedroom).

4 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. We have dinner at the (bank - museum - hospital - restaurant).
2. I like sitting on this armchair. It's very (comfortable - unfriendly - unlucky - unhappy).
3. He (go - went - goes - going) to Aswan two years ago.
4. I couldn't (saw - sees - see - seeing) them in the dark.
5. A (bat - bird - parrot - penguin) can't fly, but it can swim.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (5Ms)

1. a headache - you - Do - have?
▶ ....?
2. basketball - I - play - can.
▶ ....
3. eat - Don't - library - the - in.
▶ ....
4. balcony - is - The - fantastic.
▶ ....
5. should - stay - We - home.
▶ ....

أسئلة التلاميذ الذين تخلفوا عن أداء امتحان الفصل الدراسي الأول

6 Choose the correct answer: (30Ms)

1. She wears a gold (necklace - bracelet - dress) around her neck.
2. We (mustn't - must - can't) play sports to stay healthy.
3. Tourism gives (clothes - food - jobs) for local people.
4. I was (read - reading - reads) a book at 10 am yesterday.
5. Are there (much - a - any) tomatoes in the fridge?
6. I'm good at (speak - speaking - speaks) English.

Exam (4) Cairo Governorate Mostakbal Zone

....
30Ms



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (73) آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4Ms)

1. On vacation, Hossam went to ....
   a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) Tanta d) Helwan
2. They did many ....
   a) days b) activities c) weeks d) sports
3. He swam in the sea and built a ....
   a) zoo b) cinema c) sandcastle d) box
4. They played volleyball on the ....
   a) zoo b) club c) park d) beach

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1.5Ms)

1. In Ancient Egypt, they used .... bricks.
   a) mud b) water c) gold d) silver
2. Honey has things that can .... bacteria.
   a) help b) make c) kill d) live
3. Welcome .... our city.
   a) in b) of c) on d) to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:(1.5Ms)

next - armchair - right - team

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the ❶ ...., there is my bed with a desk ❷ .... to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an ❸ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

Amal is ten years old. She has two sisters and one brother. Amal lives in a village near the river. Farmers grow many fruits and vegetables there. They grow onions, tomatoes, and rice. Farmers grow apples and

Term 2

oranges, too. There are a lot of plants near the river. Plants near the river need a lot of water.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1M)

1. Amal is .... years old.
   a) ten b) five c) six d) three

2. Amal lives in a .... near the river.
   a) town b) city c) village d) sea

B Answer the following questions: (6Ms)

3. What do farmers grow? ▶ ....
4. Do you think plants need water? ▶ ....
5. Summarize the text in two sentences. ▶ ....

5 Put the words in correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. cut - my - I - knee - week - last.
   ▶ ....
2. shelter - gives - us - shade - and - The tree.
   ▶ .... ?

6 Read and write the correct form of word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. Snails .... (can't) live in shells.
2. What .... (are) the matter?

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. how often does Salma watch TV ▶ ....
2. egypt's coast includes two seas ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"Your favorite sea animal"

▶ Guiding words: **1. shark** **2. dolphin**

....
....
....
....

Term 2

Exam (5) Beni Suef Education Administration

....

30Ms



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (73) آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4Ms)

1. The Ancient Egyptians lived near the ....
   a) desert b) Red Sea c) beach d) Nile
2. They used water for .... and drinking.
   a) traveling b) baking c) washing d) swimming
3. They used .... from the Nile for making bricks.
   a) wind b) mud c) fish d) water
4. Ancient Egyptian homes all had .... roofs.
   a) flat b) big c) high d) wide

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1.5Ms)

1. There's a wonderful view from my ....
   a) balcony b) oven c) armchair d) elevator
2. The doctor gave Mona a/an ....
   a) sandwich b) injection c) sweet d) toy
3. Trees give us shelter and ....
   a) milk b) meat c) shade d) eggs

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

carry - share - posters - left

I love my bedroom. I ❶ .... it with my sister. On the right, there'smy bed . On the ❷ ...., there is my sister's bed. In the middle ofthe room, there's an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of ❸ .... of animals.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

Nour didn't go to school yesterday. She was <u>sick</u>. She had a cough and a sore throat. She was very hot and didn't feel well. Her mom took her to the doctor. The doctor gave her some medicine. He asked her to drink

Term 2

a lot of water and stay in bed. She is feeling better today. She can go out and play with us.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1M)

1. The underlined word "sick" means ....
   a) happy b) ill c) angry d) sad
2. The doctor gave Nour some ....
   a) medicine b) milk c) water d) books

B Answer the following questions: (6Ms)

3. Why didn't Nour go to school yesterday? ▶ ....
4. What did the doctor ask Nour to do? ▶ ....
5. Summarize the text in two sentences. ▶ ....

5 Put the words in correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. mats - Ancient - on - slept - Egyptians - reed.
   ▶ ....
2. last - Knee - week - I - my - cut.
   ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. Ali .... (have) a headache.
2. We go swimming.................. (at) Mondays.

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. is there a bank near here ▶ ....
2. amr and Maged are tall ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"A place you visited"

▶ **Guiding words:** 1. zoo 2. saw

....
....
....
....

Exam (6) Director of Damanhour Port

30Ms

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (73) آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4Ms)

1. Mazen is planning a vacation to ....
   a) Alexandria b) Luxor c) Cairo d) Aswan
2. The Cairo Tower is known for being very tall and made of ....
   a) stone b) metal c) wood d) glass
3. Mazen hopes to learn about ancient Egypt at the ....
   a) Egyptian Museum b) Al - Azhar Park
   c) Cairo Tower d) Khan El - Khalili
4. Al - Azhar Park is famous for its beautiful ....
   a) trees and flowers b) pyramids
   c) historical artifacts d) busy markets

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1.5Ms)

1. You should drink water when you take ....
   a) pills b) cream c) illnesses d) away
2. The .... are amazing birds. They can swim so well.
   a) bats b) snails c) parrots d) penguins
3. To go upstairs, use the ....
   a) factory b) elevator c) basket d) station

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

architect - place - unusual - blogging

My name's Michael and I like ❶ .... about different things. Every week I write about different subject. This week I'm writing about ❷ .... homes. This topic is very interesting to many people and to me because my father is an ❸ ...., so he sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. It's awesome!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

Hello, I'm Eman. I'm in grade five. Basketball is my favorite sport. I play it with my friends. We play it in a team. We play it at the club near my house. We go to the club twice a week for training. I love my teammates. When I play in a team of five players, I learn how to cooperate with others and do successful things together. You can win a basketball match by scoring the most points.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1M)

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a) football b) basketball c) swimming d) running
2. Eman plays basketball with her ....
   a) brothers b) sisters c) friends d) family

B Answer the following questions: (6Ms)

3. What's Eman's favorite sport? ▶ ....
4. How many players are there in a basketball team? ▶ ....
5. Summarize the text in two sentences. ▶ ....

5 Put the words in correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. to plant - is - Why - it - important - trees? ▶ .... ?
2. we - on - Yesterday, - went - trip - a boat. ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. She .... (could) speak two languages now. She's clever.
2. I'm .... (do) a project on bats at school.

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. what's your favorite animal, Ahmed ▶ ....
2. Yes I like chicken fish and mango ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

My city

▶ Guiding words: **1. big** **2. clean** **3. restaurants**

....
....
....

Exam (7) Kafr El Sheikh Education Directorate

....
30Ms

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (73) آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4Ms)

1. The dugong is a/an ....
   a) wild animal b) sea animal c) insect d) bird
2. It eats ....
   a) grass b) fruit c) banana d) meat
3. It has got a lovely friendly ....
   a) eye b) ear c) face d) head
4. Its nickname is the ....
   a) fat cow b) ugly cow c) big cow d) sea cow

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1.5Ms)

1. Very small things that can make you ill are ....
   a) birds b) bacteria c) farmers d) insects
2. They didn't recognize the road because they were ....
   a) lost b) happy c) lucky d) clever
3. This .... serves delicious dishes.
   a) hospital b) library c) restaurant d) bank

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

mats - insects - delicious - papyrus

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from now. There were reed ❶ .... to sit and sleep on it. They used ❷ .... to cover the windows. This kept ❸ .... outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

London is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You can see

famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Theme.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1M)

1. The underlined word "relaxing" means ....
   a) free b) busy c) comfortable d) drawing

2. You can take a .... trip on the River Themes.
   a) school b) bus c) train d) boat

B Answer the following questions: (6Ms)

3. Summarize the text in one sentence. ▶ ....

4. Mention some famous places in London. ▶ ....

5. How is the weather like in London? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. hospital - is - a busy - The - place.
   ▶ ....

2. he - a - throat - Does - have - sore?
   ▶ .... ?

6 Read and write the correct form of word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. He is .... (interesting) in playing video games .

2. Mona .... (can) ride a bike when she was five.

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. thank you for helping me ▶ ....

2. Why is it good to eat healthy food Adel ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"Honey"

▶ Guiding words: 1. treat wounds 2. kill bacteria

....
....
....
....

Exam (8) Menoufia Governorate Qawisna Educational Administration



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (73) آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4Ms)

1. Last week, I had a lovely day in ....
   a) Luxor b) Cairo c) Alexandria d) London
2. I traveled with my mom to see my ....
   a) grandpa b) aunt c) uncle d) grandma
3. When we arrived there, ... was ready. It was delicious.
   a) breakfast b) supper c) dinner d) lunch
4. In the evening, we had a nice .... on the beach.
   a) walk b) run c) swim d) play

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1.5Ms)

1. The .... has a shell but it doesn't have legs or arms.
   a) panda b) snail c) parrot d) penguin
2. My head hurts. I have a ....
   a) backache b) earache c) toothache d) headache
3. You need a .... to travel to a different country.
   a) passport b) suitcase c) hotel d) beach

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

insects - cotton - sit - wooden

Furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was different from today. There were reed mats to ❶ .... and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and the doors. This kept the ❷ .... outside. In every home there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and ❸ .... boxes for storing clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

Staying healthy is easy! First, eat good food like fruit and vegetables to keep your body strong. Remember to drink a lot of water every day to be hydrated. Avoid fizzy drinks because they have lots of sugar that's



not good for you. Also, don't spend too much time watching TV or playing computer games. Instead, go outside and play! Moving your body is fun and helps keep you healthy. So, eat well, drink water, and play outside for a happy, healthy life!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1M)

1. The main idea of the text is about staying ....
   a) strong b) safe c) healthy d) clean
2. We should drink a lot of .... every day.
   a) cola b) water c) fizzy d) oil

B Answer the following questions: (6Ms)

3. What should we eat to be strong? ▶ ....
4. Why should we avoid fizzy drinks? ▶ ....
5. Summarize the text in two sentences. ▶ ....

5 Put the words in correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. in - jungle - monkey - lives - The howler - the.
   ▶ ....
2. when - are - the - Keep - you - quiet - in - library.
   ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. The first lesson starts .... (on) eight o'clock.
2. English is an .... (amazed) subject.

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. excuse me, where is the bank ▶ ....
2. my favorite animal is the monkey ▶ ....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

Your favorite unusual animal

▶ Guiding words: ▶ What is it? ▶ How does it look like?

....
....
....

Exam (9) Beni Suef Education Administration

.... 30Ms

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (73) آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4Ms)

1. I like .... food.
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) bad d) terrible
2. It's important to eat .... and vegetables.
   a) crisps b) chocolate c) fruit d) sugar
3. We should do some .... every day.
   a) exercise b) shopping c) boxing d) visiting
4. It's important to keep our body ....
   a) drinking b) sleeping c) watching d) moving

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1.5Ms)

1. A .... is someone who lives in a village.
   a) local villager b) monkeys c) children d) doctors
2. His cat died last week. He was very ....
   a) awesome b) lucky c) sad d) happy
3. Farmers grow vegetables and keep .... in the countryside.
   a) furniture b) chickens c) papyrus d) gardens

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

school - treatment - special - honey

My name is Mona. I'm a doctor. I work in a hospital. My favorite food is ❶ .... I like honey because it's not only a food, but it's also a ❷ .... for some injuries and illnesses. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. I use honey too, but it's ❸ .... honey. Only doctors use it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

My name's Ali. My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. Three years ago, something frightening happened to him and he was lucky. He lived

to tell me about it! He was interested in howler monkeys.
When he was doing some research about a family group of them, there was a lot of rain and the water carried him away down the river. A local villager saved him and he was very happy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1M)

1. Ali's uncle was interested in .... and he was doing research about them.
   a) local villager b) South America c) howler monkeys d) people
2. Ali's uncle loves animals and he works as a ....
   a) villager b) farmer c) scientist d) traveler

B Answer the following questions: (6Ms)

3. Who saved Ali's uncle when he was in the river? ▶ ....
4. Why did Ali's uncle travel a lot in South America? ▶ ....
5. Summarize the text in two sentences. ▶ ....

5 Put the words in correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. homes - people - Where - did - build - their?
   ▶ ....
2. about - writing - This week, - I'm - homes - unusual.
   ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. Do you .... (has) a headache?
2. My sister didn't .... (ate) her dinner yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. why should we look after our health ▶ ....
2. ramez went to the wildlife park ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

My favorite animal

▶ Guiding words: ▶ What is it? ▶ Where does it live?

....
....
....

Exam (10) Beni-Suef Governorate
Nasser Educational Directorate

30Ms

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (73) آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4Ms)

1. Omar is an excellent ....
   a) father b) teacher c) engineer d) student
2. He likes to .... his friends.
   a) walk b) hit c) help d) fight
3. He likes to read books in the ....
   a) restaurant b) beach c) library d) home
4. His favorite subject is ....
   a) English b) Arabic c) French d) Italian

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1.5Ms)

1. They went to the .... to play football.
   a) hospital b) library c) museum d) playground
2. I like the beach, it is a .... place.
   a) relaxing b) dark c) boring d) dangerous
3. We put our clothes in a .... when we travel.
   a) camera b) passport c) ticket d) suitcase

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

special - treatment - school - hospital

I'm a doctor. I work in a ❶ .... My favorite food is honey. I like honey because it's not only a food, but it's also a ❷ .... for some injuries and illnesses. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. I use honey too, but it's a ❸ .... honey. Only doctors use it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

My name is Mona. I moved to a new apartment last week. I love this new apartment. It is much bigger than our old apartment. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. It's much easier to cook



in. The living room is bigger than the old one so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Dalia, but our bedroom is really big. I like our apartment.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1M)

1. The opposite of the underlined word "old" is ....
   a) new b) ugly c) dark d) bad
2. Mona moved to a new ....
   a) school b) class c) apartment d) city

B Answer the following questions: (6Ms)

3. Summarize the main idea of the text in a sentence. ▶ ....
4. How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment? ▶ ....
5. When did Mona move to a new apartment? ▶ ....

5 Put the words in correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. you - Do - living - like- here?
   ▶ .... ?
2. to - went- Ramez- a wildlife- park.
   ▶ ....

6 Read and write the correct form of word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. Did it .... (rained) yesterday?
2. I .... (has) a headache.

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. do you like fish ▶ ....
2. our town is perfect ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

Your favorite animal

▶ Guiding questions:
▶ What is your favorite animal?
▶ Where does it live?

....
....
....

Exam (11) Baltim Educational Administration

30Ms

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (73) آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4Ms)

1. My uncle is a ....
   a) scientist b) teacher c) doctor d) driver
2. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in .... America.
   a) East b) West c) North d) South
3. People were very .... and helped him with his work there.
   a) angry b) friendly c) nervous d) worried
4. He was very interested in howler ....
   a) lions b) lizards c) monkeys d) foxes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1.5Ms)

1. They watch TV in their ....
   a) bathroom b) kitchen c) living room d) elevator
2. We use water for washing, cooking and ....
   a) reading b) drinking c) writing d) talking
3. Ali went to the dentist because he had a / an ....
   a) earache b) cold c) cough d) toothache

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5Ms)

sad – parrot – park – enjoyed

Yesterday, Ramy went to a wildlife ❶ .... with his family. He enjoyed it very much. They saw lots of different animals like lions, kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite bird, the ❷ .... He was a bit ❸ .... because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a project about them.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open.

It's free to go in! There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1M)

1. The main idea of the text is "Our .... town".
   a) wonderful b) crowded c) ugly d) busy
2. The underlined word "perfect "means ....
   a) poor b) excellent c) boring d) weak

B Answer the following questions: (6Ms)

3. Which place can you get in for free? ▶ ....
4. What does the market sell? ▶ ....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. ▶ ....

5 Put the words in correct order to make sentences: (1M)

1. moved - a new - We - to - house.
   ▶ ....
2. you - Do - honey - like?
   ▶ .... ?

6 Read and write the correct form of word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. They .... (has) an earache.
2. I could .... (rides) a bike when I was seven.

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. we all love Egypt ▶ ....
2. how about having some juice ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"Your favorite animals"

▶ **Guiding questions:** ▶ Where do they live? ▶ What do they look like?

....
....
....
....

Term 2

Part (3)

Listening Scripts





In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this.



Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment.



Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.



Alexandria is in the north of Egypt. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach! And if you like reading, there's the great Alexandria Library.



Nada is going on vacation. She is traveling to Canada by plane. Today, she is packing her suitcase. She knows that there is often rain in Canada, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a sweater. Nada loves swimming very much. She wants to go swimming there.



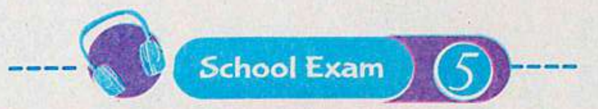
Last year, we moved into a new apartment in Alexandria. It's a beautiful apartment. We have three bedrooms, two bathrooms, and a big living room. We invited our cousins to visit us at our new apartment.



London is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains in London. There are lots of fun things to do and see there. It's really amazing!



I get up at six o'clock. I have my breakfast with my parents. I like honey. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years ago.



Alexandria is a beautiful city. On vacation, Hossam went to Alexandria with his father, his mother, and his sister Mona. The weather was good and they did many activities. Hossam swam in the sea and built a sand castle. In the afternoon, the family had lunch and played volleyball on the beach. At the end of the day, they went to a fish restaurant and ate nice dinner.

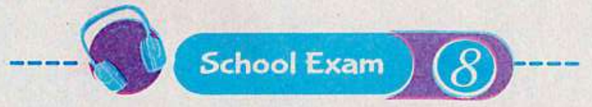


The Ancient Egyptians lived near the Nile. They used its water for washing and drinking. They used mud from the Nile for making bricks. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs.

I'm Mazen. I want to have a perfect vacation. My next trip is to Cairo. I love this city! I want to visit the Cairo Tower. It is very tall and made of metal. I also want to visit the Egyptian Museum. In the Egyptian Museum, I will learn a lot about Egypt in the past. I also want to visit Al - Azhar Park. It has a lot of fantastic trees and flowers. It sounds interesting! I cannot wait to go there soon! Cairo is a wonderful city!



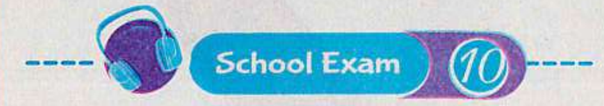
The dugong is a sea animal. It lives all his life in water. It eats grass from the sea bed. The dugong has got a lovely friendly face. It is cute. Its nickname is the sea cow.



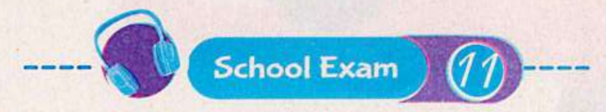
I had a lovely day in Alexandria last week. I traveled with my mom to see my aunt Ghada. When we arrived there, we went to my aunt's house. Lunch was ready. we ate fish with salad. It was delicious. In the evening, we had a nice walk on the beach.



I like healthy food. It's really important to eat healthy food like fruit and vegetables. We should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep our body moving playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.



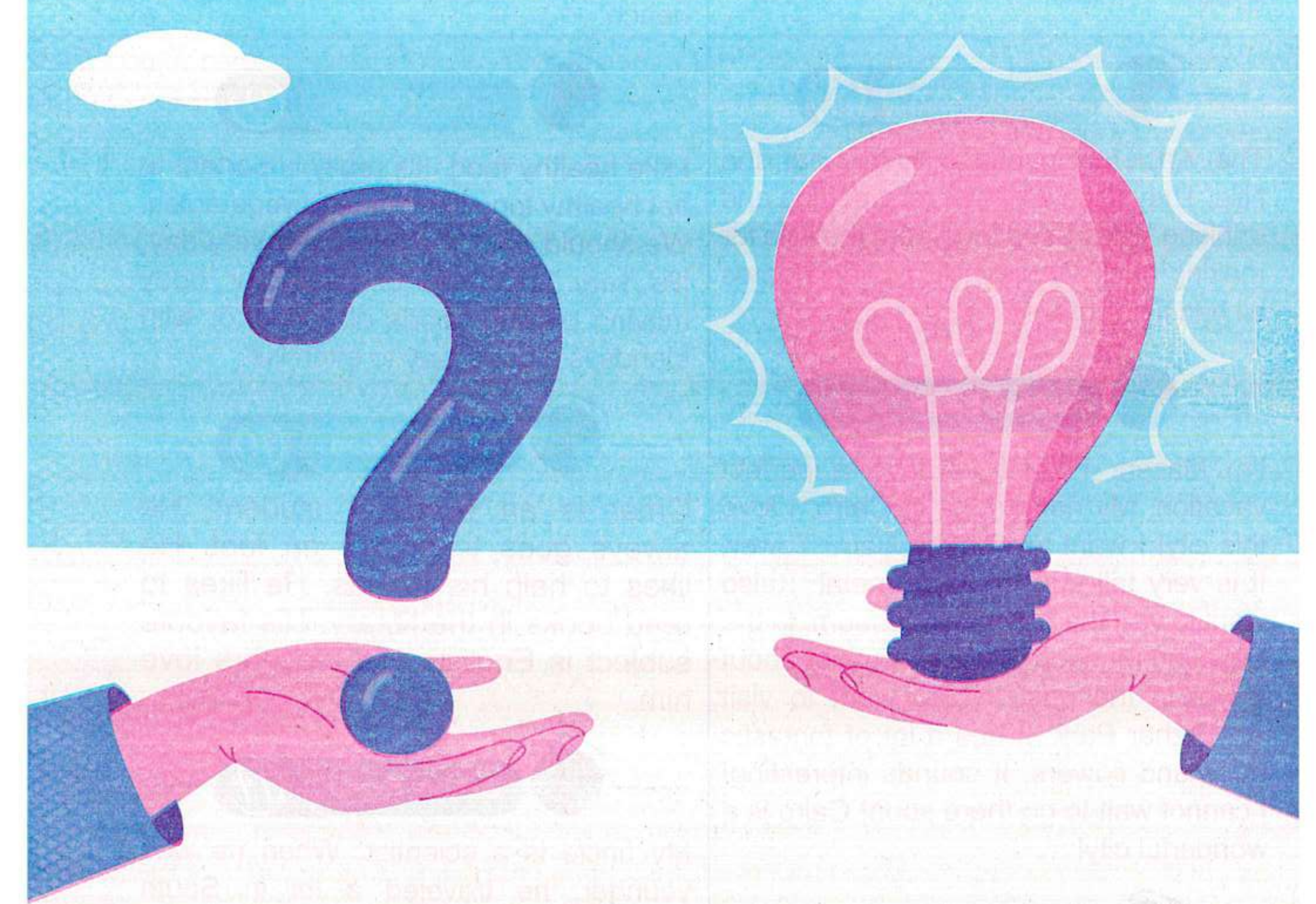
Omar is an excellent student. He always goes to school on foot. He likes to help his friends. He likes to read books in the library. His favorite subject is English. His teachers love him.



My uncle is a scientist. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America. People were very friendly and helped him with his work there. He was very interested in howler monkeys.

Part 4

Answer Key



Part 1 The Set Book

Unit (7)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:
1- apartment 2- kitchen 3- living

2 Read and complete the text:
1- bedrooms 2- share 3- bathrooms

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- armchairs 2- bedroom 3- oven
4- bathroom 5- closet 6- share
7- living room 8- apartments 9- balcony
10- cushions

4 Read and complete the text:
1. apartment 2. farther
3. Because they had to move to a new job.
4. Two bathrooms.
5. Fareeda has a new apartment. She invites her friend Dina to see it.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Do you like living here?
2- We moved to a closer apartment.
3- They were a gift from Grandma.
4- What's better about this new apartment?
5- I share a room with my sister.
6- Do you live in a house or an apartment?

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- live 2- is 3- have 4- likes
5- live 6- is 7- have 8- is

7 Punctuate the sentences:
1) Where does Dina live?
2) Alexandria is in the north of Egypt.
3) Cairo is a big city.
4) Does Fareeda like her new apartment?

8 Write a paragraph:
I live in a nice apartment in a new city. It is a big apartment with three bedrooms and two bathrooms. It is a modern place with cool designs, and I like my big TV. I moved to this apartment two years ago, and I like it very much!

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1- share 2- cushions 3- closet

2 Read and complete the text:
1- traveled 2- work 3- friendly

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- was 2- were 3- was
4- was 5- were 6- was
7- were 8- visited 9- went
10- met 11- traveled 12- missed
13- started 14- didn't 15- didn't
16- help 17- make 18- go
19- eat 20- play

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- unhappy 2- uncomfortable 3- unsafe
4- unfair 5- unlucky 6- unfriendly
7- uncomfortable 8- unhappy
9- unfriendly 10- unsafe

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- On 2- In 3- On 4- to 5- On

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- met 2- created 3- carried 4- went
5- came 6- unhappy 7- uncomfortable
8- weren't 9- unhappy 10- uncomfortable
11- know 12- unsafe 13- unfair 14- come
15- unlucky 16- missed 17- drove/bought
18- slept 19- had

7 Put the words in the correct order:
1- My uncle is a scientist.
2- What things make a perfect bedroom?
3- There are lots of animal posters.
4- It was very heavy rain.
5- My uncle was very frightened!

8 Punctuate the sentences:
1) They didn't go to the beach on Sunday.
2) We went to Sharm El-Sheikh on holiday.
3) What things make a perfect bedroom for you? 4- I love my bedroom.
5- His grandma went to Aswan last year.

9 Write a paragraph:
I love my bedroom. It's very beautiful. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is a computer on a desk. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

Answer Key

Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text:
1- drinking 2- mud 3- bricks

2 Read and complete the text:
1- bricks 2- roofs 3- relaxed

3 Complete the double vowel words:
tree - spoon - sheep - roof / school - seeds - queen - pool

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- mud 2- roof 3- furniture 4- mats
5- pots 6- close 7- floors 8- grew
9- kept 10- banks

6 Read the text and answer:
1- cities 2- people
3- Farmers grow vegetables.
4- In the countryside, houses usually only have one floor, and they also have a garden.
5- Ancient Egyptian homes

7 Read and write the correct form:
1- made 2- had 3- build
4- wasn't 5- stored

8 Put the words in the correct order:
1– Ancient Egyptian homes had flat roofs.
2– The mud bricks made very strong walls.
3– What did people use to build their home?
4– Ancient Egyptians made their homes near the Nile.
5– In the countryside, houses usually had one floor.
6– Where did Ancient Egyptians build their homes?

9 Punctuate the sentences:
1. What do you think Ancient Egyptian homes were like?
2. They saw the banks of the River Nile.
3. In Egypt, houses have a special style.
4. Where did Ayman go last Monday?

10 Write a paragraph:
Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to build their homes near the Nile. Houses were usually one floor only in villages, and families used to cook and relax on the flat roofs because it was the coolest part of the house. Their furniture was simple and beautiful.

Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text:
1- down 2- landscape 3- ecological

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- Blogging 2- unusual 3- ecological
4- architect 5- farmhouses 6- landscape
7- awful 8- annoying 9- awesome
10- cool

3 Read the text and answer:
1– blogging 2- usual
3– She's writing about unusual homes.
4– Dalida's mom takes her to see some brilliant places.
5- She's an architect.

4 Read and write the correct form:
1- like 2- are 3- are 4- look 5- Is

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1) I like blogging about different things.
2) This topic is very interesting.
3) Dalida didn't visit the unusual house.
4) Local people like this unusual house.

6 Write your blog:
Do your research and write about your favorite unusual home.

7 Give a presentation:
Do your research and give a presentation.

Unit (7) Test (1)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:
1) bedroom 2) armchair 3) wall

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1) apartment 2) town 3) kitchen
4) cushions

3 Read the text and answer:
1 To make them cooler. 2 The flat roofs were the coolest part of the house.
3- homes 4- washing 5- strong

4 Choose the correct answer:
1) unlucky 2) gave 3) roof
4) go 5) modern

5 Reorder the words:
1- Do you like the upside down house?
2- Egyptian houses had a special style.
3- I'm writing about unusual homes.
4- Where do you live?
5- He was very interested in monkeys.

Unit (7) Test (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1) scientist 2) work 3) friendly 4) three

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- apartment 2- share 3- unfair 4- awesome

3 Read and complete the text:
1- mats 2- pots 3- crops

4 Read the text and answer:
1- young 2- on foot
3-She works in a primary school. 4- By car.
5- five people

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1. Is your home old or modern?
2. My bed is on the right.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- eat 2- uncomfortable

7 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Where does Amir live?
2- Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool.

8 Write a paragraph:
My perfect room is simple and clean. On the right, there is a tidy desk with a comfortable chair. On the left, there is my bed. In the middle, there is nothing. I like space! And on the wall, there are posters of Mohamed Salah and Dr. Ahmed Zewail. I like my room very much!

Unit (8)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:
1- have 2- hurt 3- swimming

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- throat 2- toothache 3- ankle
4- backache 5- earache 6- sore
7- cold 8- headache 9- cough 10- throat

3 Read the text and answer:
1- toothache 1- worse
3. Because his friends have problems.
4. He told them to be careful
5- Fares's bad day

4 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Did you have a good day at the club?
2- Amr has an earache from swimming.
3- The coach told us to be careful.
4- How do you feel?
5- I'm worried about my friends.
6- Do you have a sore throat?
7- Does your stomach hurt?
8- What is the matter, Dina?

5 Read and write the correct form:
1- do 2- feel 3- have 4- come
5- feel 6- has 7- have

6 Punctuate the sentences:
1- How does Fares feel today?
2- In Ancient Egypt, doctors often used honey as medicine.
3- My friend Tarek hurt his ankle.
4- I think Lama went to the dentist.

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1- hospital 2- patients 3- relatives
4- staff 5- injection 6- helpful

2 Read and complete the text:
1- hurt 2- cut 3- bandage

3 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary
1- hospital 2- crowded 3- injections
4- staff 5- helpful 6- treats 7- patients
8- members 9- stomachache 10- medicine

4 Choose the correct answer: Grammar
1- has 2- have 3- has 4- have 5- don't
6- doesn't 7- have 8- have 9- have
10- Does 11- Do 12- have 13- have
14- have 15- have

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1) Do you have an earache?
2) I have a sore throat.
3) He has a cold.
4) Does Nader have a headache?
5) I don't feel well.
6) I don't have a stomachache.

7) The hospital is often crowded.
8) I have a cut on my arm.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- unusual 2- illegal 3- unwell 4- immoral
5- irresponsible 6- impossible 7- unhappy
8- unsafe 9- unfit 10- impolite 11- irregular

7 Read and write the correct form:
1- treats 2- is 3- learn 4- has 5- hurts

8 Punctuate the sentences:
1) Come in, Gamila.
2) Did Karim hit his ear with a ball?
3) In a hospital in India, there are many patients.
4) What part of her body has Nahla hurt?

Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text:
1- treatment 2- wounds 3- healing

2 Read and complete the text:
1- heal 2- treatment 3- cut

3 Complete the words:
1- frog 2- vet 3- scarf 4- vegetables
5- fruit 6- television

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- bacteria 2- treatment 3- wounds
4- healing 5- sunscreen 6- honey
7- treatment 8- kill 9- pills 10- care

5 Read the text and answer:
1- kinds 2- thousand
3- It contains things that can help to kill bacteria. 4- It is a special honey that is safe to use as a treatment.
5- In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- make 2- is 3- kill 4- most
5- like 6- have

7 Put the words in the correct order:
1. I cut my knee last week.
2. Do you like honey?
3. Bees make honey.
4. We like watching television.
5. Do you like vegetables?
6. Which is the most popular food?

8 Write a paragraph:
Honey comes from bees. It's a sweet food. In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years to treat wounds. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria.

Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text:
1- drink 2- exercising 3- sleep

2 Read and complete the text:
1- healthy 2- Spending 3- family

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- healthy 2- stay 3- sleep 4- Spending
5- drink 6- get 7- Playing 8- happy

4 Read the text and answer:
1- moving 2- worst
3- It's a good way to exercise.
4- Because it's important to get enough sleep.
5-How to look after your health

5 Read and write the correct form:
1- do 2- sleep 3- is 4- are 5- do

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- It's important to eat healthy foods.
2-You should do some exercise every day.
3- What do you do to stay healthy?
4- It's important to get enough sleep.

7 Write a paragraph:
Our teachers gave us some important advice on how to stay healthy. I try to drink plenty of water. I do some exercise every day, either alone or by playing sports with friends. I sleep 8 hours every night. I see my friends and family regularly, and I try to eat vegetables every day!

Unit (8) Test (3)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:
1) bacteria 2) heal 3) safe

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1) ankle 2) earache 3) toothache 4) throat

3 Read the text and answer:
1- No, it's unusual.
2- Some of them learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.
3- sick 4- crowded 5- bandages

4 Choose the correct answer:
1) bandage 2) unsafe 3) headache
4) have 5) do

5 Reorder the words:
1- I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.
2- Do you have a toothache?
3- I really like fruit.
4- It's important to keep your body moving.
5- Does your stomach hurt?

Unit (8) Test (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1) healthy 2) diet 3) sleep 4) plenty

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- hurts 2- stomachache 3- medicine

3 Read and complete the text:
1- unwell 2- crowded 3- staff

4 Read the text and answer:
1- patients 2- bread
3- A nurse helps doctors and looks after sick people.
4- Because she always smiles at them and looks after them.
5- He works in a bakery next to our house.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Which food is the most popular? **Or** Which is the most popular food?
2- I have a very long scarf.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- illegal 2- has

7 Punctuate the sentence:
1- It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors.
2- You should drink plenty of water.

8 Write a paragraph:
I visited my doctor last Saturday when I had a very bad cough. My mother was worried. When I went there, he told my mother not to worry; it was just a cold. He told me to take honey with lemon, to get enough rest, and to drink hot soup. I feel much better now!

Unit (9)

Lesson 1

1 Complete the summary of the text:
1- park 2- enjoyed 3- lions
4- parrots 5- sad 6- project

2 Read and complete the text:
1- wildlife 2- kangaroos 3- pouch

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- snail 2- kangaroo 3- bat 4- lion
5- parrot 6- penguin 7- dolphin 8- panda

4 Read and answer:
1- lions 2- light
3- Parrots are Ramez's favorite birds.
4- He couldn't see them because they were all hiding in the dark.
5- Ramez went to the new wildlife park yesterday. It was awesome and he saw so many animals.

5 Read and write the correct form:
1- go 2- go 3- swim 4- doing 5- went

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- They can swim so well.
2- What birds did you see?
3- The kangaroos were interesting.
4- Where did Ramez go yesterday?
5- I went to the park.
6- I'm doing a project on bats.

7 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Where did Ramez go last Tuesday?
2- The kangaroo lives in Australia.
3- Did Ayman go with him to the park?
4- No, he couldn't see the bats.
5- Lions live in Africa, but pandas live in China.

8 Write a paragraph:
"My favorite animal"
My favorite animal is the monkey. It lives in the forest, but I can see it in the zoo. It's a very naughty animal. It keeps moving and jumping from a tree to another. I like it

because it's a funny animal. It eats bananas and nuts. I always play with it when I go to the zoo.

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1- trunk 2- shelter 3- travelers

2 Read and complete the text:
1- field 2- shade 3- breeze

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- wind 2- can't 3- don't thank
4- nice 5- meet

4 Choose the correct answer:
1. can 2. Could 3. can 4. couldn't
5. can 6. couldn't 7. Can 8. couldn't
9. can't 10. could 11. Could 12.come
13. go 14. buy 15. play 16. can
17. couldn't 18. Could 19. can't 20. can't

5 Read and write the correct form:
1- play 2- couldn't 3- move 4- Could
5- read 6- can't 7- speak 8- couldn't
9- can 10- can

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1) I can play basketball.
2) Can you play tennis?
3) I can't speak Italian.
4) The travelers were very tired.
5) Why is it important to plant trees?
6) It was a very hot day.
7) Why was the tree angry?

Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text:
1- Wednesday 2- west 3- vest
4- whales 5- watermelon 6- village

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- reader 2- climb 3- climber 4- read
5- traveler 6- travels 7- farmers 8- farm

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- annoyed 2- annoying 3- amazing
4- amazed 5- tired 6- tiring
7- surprised 8- surprising

4 Read and write the correct form:
1- boring 2- bored 3- interested
4- interesting 5- annoying 6- tiring
7- decided 8- find

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1) She's very friendly in classroom.
2) That movie was so boring.
3) He traveled to many places.
4) He read about twenty books.
5) I can't wait to get home.

Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text:
1- nickname 2- cow 3- sea

2 Read and write the correct form:
1- is 2- love 3- find 4- are 5- see

3 Put the words in the correct order:
1- We're talking about unusual animals.
2- Amir wants to talk about wildlife.
3- What's your favorite unusual animal?
4- He sends a photo to Tamer.
5- He wants Tamer to write back.

4 Punctuate the sentences:
1) My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong.
2) Can you see the photo of aunt Amira?
3) The two friends, Tamer and Amir, are talking about unusual animals.
4) Maha, come here please!
5) My favorite sports are tennis, swimming, cycling and football.

5 Write a paragraph:
Hi! I'm Hosam. I want to tell you about my favorite unusual animal, the dugong! I think it's got a lovely, friendly face, and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow, and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day. I like it so much!

Unit (9) Test (4)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:
1) park 2) kangaroo 3) bats

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1) wonderful 2) wildlife 3) kangaroos
4) parrots

3 Read the text and answer:
1- Because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country.

2- It had lived for many years.
3- dry 4- trunk 5- traders

4 Choose the correct answer:
1) farmer 2) can 3) Pandas
4) Could 5) vet

5 Reorder the words:
1) Can you play tennis?
2) Mr Ashraf is an excellent teacher.
3) What's your favorite animal?
4) My grandfather was a great traveler.
5) Why are trees important for animals?

Unit (9) Test (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1) dugong 2) friendly 3) cow 4) grass

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- penguins 2- wildlife 3- useless

3 Read and complete the text:
1- shade 2- rested 3- exhausted

4 Read the text and answer:
1- reptile house 2- dangerous
3- They went there on the school bus.
4- They saw pigeons, parrots, falcons and eagles. 5- A trip to the zoo

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- The tree was a meeting point for traders.
2- Baby kangaroos sit in their mom's pouch.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- live 2- could

7 Punctuate the sentence:
1- **O**n **F**riday, **I** play football with my friend **O**mar.
2- **L**ast **T**hursday, my school made a trip to the zoo.

8 Write a paragraph:
Planting trees is very important! That's because trees give us so many wonderful things. They make the air clean and fresh, and they give us shade on hot days. Trees are important for humans because they give us oxygen to breathe and help prevent climate change. Animals love trees too, because they give them homes and food. Trees are just awesome!

Units (7-8-9) Test (7)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1) park 2) lions 3) birds

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- two 2- bat 3- stomachache 4- unwell

3 Read and complete the text:
1- vest 2- whales 3- watermelon

4 Read the text and answer:
1- reading 2- keeping
3- They used mud from the river.
4- It was very different. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.
5- Ancient Egyptian homes

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Why is it important to plant trees?
3- Some types of honey can kill bacteria.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- speak 2- unhappy

7 Punctuate the sentence:
1- **D**oes **D**ina like her new apartment?
2- **M**ona likes swimming.

8 Write a paragraph:
A balanced diet is really important for our bodies to stay strong and healthy! We need to drink lots of water to stay hydrated. Eating vegetables and fruit gives us vitamins and minerals. Healthy food helps us grow big and strong.

Unit (10)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:
1- see 2- city 3- restaurants

2 Read and complete the text:
1- museums 2- hotel 3- mint

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- factory 2- borrow 3- station 4- cuisine
5- shopping mall 6- mint 7- beach
8- restaurant 9- library 10- market

4 Read and write the correct form:
1- love 2- is 3- have 4- is 5- visiting
6- am 7- buys

5 Read the text and answer:
1. Egyptian 2. Alexandria
3. You will try some of the local cuisine.
4. She bought ingredients at the market in the old town.
5. Hanan has lived in Alexandria all her life. She owns a restaurant and serves traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients.

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Who is from Alexandria?
2- Alexandria is a really exciting place.
3- You must visit my restaurant.
4- I moved to Alexandria last year.
5- My favorite place is the beach.
6- Lena likes shopping in Alexandria.

7 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Who is from Alexandria?
2- I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo.
3- Which of the places are in your town?
4- I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany.

8 Write a paragraph:
I live in a small town in Port Said. It is famous for fishing and being near the Suez Canal. People here are very kind and helpful, and I know all my neighbors! What makes my town special is the music and the seafood!

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1- straight 2- right 3- on

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- Eat 2- Don't spend 3- write 4- Do
5- Don't 6- listen 7- come 8- Hurry up
9- keep 10- Do 11- Don't 12- do
13- Work 14- shout 15- be 16- pick

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- how 2- where 3- on 4- on
5- across 6- to 7- on 8- near

4 Read and write the correct form:
1- Stand 2- Help 3- Have 4- run 5- Don't
6- be 7- Is 8- is 9- get 10- Turn
11- get 12- Go 13- on 14- on 15- Cross

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1) Choose a good book to read.
2) Don't talk loudly, please.
3) Don't write in the book.
4) Return the book to its place.
5) Can we go inside?
6) This is a very important place.
7) You shouldn't lose your book.
8) Stop making noise, please.
9) Eat fruit to stay healthy.
10) Keep the environment clean.

6 Write a paragraph:
Inside a park, you should enjoy the beautiful environment and look at the pretty flowers. You shouldn't pick the flowers. If you see trash, you should help by putting it in a trash can. It's important to keep the park clean and happy for everyone to enjoy!

Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text:
1- sacks 2- turned 3- recognize

2 Read and complete the text:
1- legs 2- unkindly 3- entertain

3 Write the words in the correct places:
1) boy – enjoy – coin
2) make – ache – bake – eight
3) go – show – grow – below – wrote
4) bite – right – time – write – bike

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- ache 2- eight 3- bake 4- grow
5- help 6- fly 7- hear 8- foolish
9- recognize 10- entertain

5 Circle the correct estimated answer:
1. (80) 2. (200) 3. (680)
4. (1200) 5. (400)

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- tells 2- meet 3- Give 4- take
5- are 6- recognize 7- help

7 Put the words in the correct order:
1- I will take them to the market.
2- Look at those enormous ears.
3- Do you need any help?
4- He decided to go to sleep.

5- You shouldn't talk to strangers.
6- Asking for help is good.

Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text:
1- exciting 2- matter 3- tourist

2 Read the text and answer:
1. monuments 2. beach
3. It is 14 kms long.
4. I can visit the cool sea when it's hot. I can also visit the beautiful International Park and the Archaeological Center.
5. New Alamein

3 Read and write the correct form:
1- go 2- are 3- Are 4- is 5- wait

4 Put the words in the correct order:
1) There are some amazing treasures.
2) You can visit the International Park.
3) There are plenty of restaurants.
4) It's really hot in our town.
5) There is a wonderful market.

5 Punctuate the sentences:
1) You will see famous palaces like Buckingham Palace and the British Museum.
2) You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames.
3) There is a big zoo in our perfect town.
4) There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein.

6 Write a paragraph:
My city is Cairo. It's one of the biggest cities in Africa! You can visit lots of amazing places here, like the Opera House. Pyramids are nearby as well. You can have dinner in a restaurant by the River Nile. Downtown Cairo is a place with many attractions for culture and arts lovers. You are welcome anytime!

Unit (10) Test (8)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:
1) Barcelona 2) buildings 3) sea

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1) Don't 2) upstairs 3) elevator 4) jump

3 Read the text and answer:
1- Every afternoon after classes.
2- It is really hot.
3- market 4- next to 5- picnics

4 Choose the correct answer:
1) get 2) apologize 3) attractions
4) eight 5) on

5 Reorder the words:
1) Fayoum is the oldest town in Egypt.
2) Can we go inside?
3) I love drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea.
4) Where is the post office, please?
5) Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit.

Unit (10) Test (9)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1) London 2) rains 3) tourist 4) Palace

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- recognize 2- elevator 3- delicious

3 Read and complete the text:
1- bank 2- beach 3- summer

4 Read the text and answer:
1- north 2- Alexandria
3- To enjoy the fresh air of the sea and go swimming or fishing.
4- It's famous for its ancient and modern buildings, beautiful beaches and friendly people.
5- Alexandria City

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1) Is this a new bike for me?
2) You shouldn't eat in the library.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- do 2- on

7 Punctuate the sentences:
- Wear your jacket, please.
- He is from Cairo.

8 Write a paragraph:
Last week, I visited the Cairo Castle with my school friends. We went there by bus, and we enjoyed it very much. It looked old, with high walls. We found a lot of tourists there, and we had a conversation with them, and they told us they liked it. It was a fun day!

Answer Key

Unit (11)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:
1- high-rise 2- Gardens 3- world

2 Read and complete the text:
1- tourists 2- theme 3- passports

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- passport 2- beach 3- hotel
4- theme park 5- suitcase 6- pool
7- trip 8- airport 9- Tourists 10- ticket

4 Read the text and answer:
1. city 2. empty
3. There are many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax.
4. Because there are flowers and plants from all around the world.
5- Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax.

5 Read and write the correct form:
1- take 2- are 3- went 4- are
5- fly 6- have

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1) Mom received an email from her sister.
2) They were in India last week.
3) There's a huge swimming pool.
4) Singapore is a wonderful city.
5) Yesterday, we went on a boat trip.
6) We spent a lot of time there.
7) We will fly to Japan tomorrow.
8) What do you take on vacation?

7 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Hello to you all from Singapore.
2- We will fly to Japan tomorrow.
3- Can you believe that the flight from India took only six hours.
4- No, I don't like adventure sports.
5- Where's your science book, Rana?

8 Write a paragraph:
On my next mid-year vacation, I will go to Hurghada with my brothers. We want to swim every day. I love swimming! We will also do some shopping. I want to buy a traditional gift for my mother. I think we will enjoy our trip!

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1- salt 2- mud 3- airport

2 Complete the text:
1- On 2- at 3- in 4- in 5- at 6- at

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- check 2- traditional 3- day trip
4- diary 5- wander 6- entry

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- on 2- at 3- in 4- in 5- in
6- at 7- at 8- at 9- on 10- in
11- in 12- in 13- on 14- on 15- in

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1) I want to see elephants.
2) The markets are wonderful.
3) I spent hours in the museum.
4) Our room was very comfortable.
5) Amman is a really busy city.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- in 2- on 3- at 4- in 5- on 6- at
7- on 8- in 9- on 10- in 11- at 12- at

7 Punctuate the sentences:
1- On Wednesdays, I play football after school.
2- Amman is a really busy city at night.
3- What country would you like to visit?
4- Did you visit the Dead Sea?
5- On Monday, we arrived in Amman.

Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text:
1- vacation 2- beach 3- low

2 Put the words in the correct column:
/θ/ bathroom – south – birthday – thousand – mouth – Thursday – thing – think – three – Earth – author
/ð/ father – they – other – clothes – leather – with – those – mother – this - these

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- go 2- bench 3- low 4- awesome
5- equilateral 6- right 7- isosceles
8- scalene

4 Read and match:
1- A 2- C 3- B 4- D

5 Read the text and answer:
1. bench 2. awesome
3. Ramy's grandma was ill.
4. Ramy wanted to go to the playground with Seleem.
5- Ramy's grandma was ill, so there's a whole group of the family who stayed at home and didn't travel to Alex. They spent the summer in Cairo, but it was awesome.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- poisonous 2- active 3- expensive
4- famous 5- go 6- are 7- feel 8- come

7 Put the words in the correct order:
1. It was a hot summer.
2. I want to be at the beach.
3. Mom wanted to stay in Cairo.
4. I think this place is fantastic.
5. They had a wonderful park.
6. Who did Marwan meet at the park?

Lessons 4 5

1 Read and complete the text:
1- sights 2- paintings 3- Tower

2 Read the text and answer:
1. ideal 2. metal
3. He will learn a lot about Egypt in the past in the Egyptian Museum.
4. He wants to have a perfect vacation.
5- A trip to Cairo

3 Read and write the correct form:
1- want 2- see 3- read 4- are
5- wait 6- is

4 Put the words in the correct order:
1. We saw some famous sights.
2. The Eiffel Tower is made of metal.
3. I tried to speak French.
4. The French people were kind.
5. I love this city.

5 Punctuate the sentences:
1- The Eiffel Tower is really tall.
2- French people were very kind.
3- Do you want to go on vacation?
4- We swam with the turtles.

7 Write a paragraph:
Last week, I went to the park with my friends. The park was beautiful. We played and had fun. The weather was so nice, too. It was an amazing day.

Unit (11) Test (10)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:
1) snorkeling 2) dunes 3) turtles

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1) low 2) vacation 3) Park 4) awesome

3 Read the text and answer:
1- The flight from India took about six hours.
2- As they are on a business trip.
3- flight 4- forty-second 5- comfortable

4 Choose the correct answer:
1) race 2) on 3) handicrafts 4) at 5) pool

5 Reorder the words:
1- Did you visit Al-Azhar Park?
2- Singapore is a wonderful city.
3- Can you keep up?
4- My phone is very expensive.
5- Is your birthday on Friday?

Unit (11) Test (11)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1) France 2) metal 3) French 4) restaurant

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- good 2- airport 3- vacation

3 Read and complete the text:
1- museum 2- destination 3- handicrafts

4 Read the text and answer:
1- countries 2- Luxor
3- They visit the Egyptian Museum and Khan El-Khalili. 4- They are in Giza.
5- Tourists come from all parts of the world to visit Egypt.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1. I bought a lovely colorful rug.
2. Do you want to go on vacation?

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- in 2- famous

7 **Punctuate the sentence:**

1- I go swimming on Mondays.
2- Tourists buy things at Luxor.

8 **Write a paragraph:**

Last week I went on a picnic with my friends. We spent our day in the park, we played football and we flew many colorful kites. We ate some ful medames for breakfast and chicken for lunch, we drank orange juice. The weather was perfect and we enjoyed our day!

Units (10-11) Test (12)

1 **Listen and circle the correct answer:**

1) beach 2) long 3) green 4) treasures

2 **Choose the correct answer:**

1- library 2- day trip 3- passport

3 **Read and complete the text:**

1- restaurant 2- cuisine 3- traditional

4 **Read the text and answer:**

1- city 2- Gardens by the Bay
3- I can see lots of high-rise buildings, parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax.
4- Because there are flowers and plants from all around the world.
5- I can sit under trees and relax and I can visit lots of different places.

5 **Put the words in the correct order:**

1- Which animal does Gabi meet first?
2- My birthday is on December 15^{th}.

6 **Read and write the correct form:**

1- is 2- on

7 **Punctuate the sentence:**

1- What country would you like to visit?
2- I live in a beautiful city.

8 **Write a paragraph:**

We went on a vacation to Hurghada last July. I went with my family. We went snorkeling and diving in the Red Sea. We saw amazing, colorful fish. We raced with beach buggies in the sand dunes. It was an amazing vacation. We all had so much fun. After the vacation ended, we went back to Cairo.

Part 2 Final Revision

Unit (7)

1 **Read and complete the text:**

1) space 2) share 3) view

2 **Read and complete the text:**

1) local 2) family 3) unsafe

3 **Read and complete the text:**

1) unusual 2) topic 3) architect

4 **Put the words in the correct order:**

1- My uncle is a scientist.
2- He traveled a lot in South America for work.
3- He was very interested in monkeys.
4- They came here by airplane.
5- It's much easier to cook in.
6- What did the houses look like?
7- I like blogging about different things.
8- Mud bricks made their homes cool.
9- We moved to a closer apartment.
10- I share a room with my sister.
11- I like this part of town.
12- Local people like this unusual house.

5 **Punctuate the sentences:**

1- Fareeda and Dina are friends.
2- I'm from Egypt.
3- Tom is from the USA.
4- His birthday is in April.
5- It's cold in the UK in January.
6- The child is happy now.
7- Is Jack from Australia?
8- Can Ayman use your camera?
9- He has a computer, a TV and a laptop.
10- Are you free on Tuesday?

6 **Read and answer:**

1- hospital 2- better
3- They didn't go because schools were in towns and cities only.
4- Farmer's life has become better and more comfortable.
5- Villages in the past and now

7 **Write a paragraph:**
"The furniture in my apartment"

We have different pieces of furniture in our house. My favorite is a big black chair

in our living room. I sit on it when I watch TV, and there is a small table next to it, for drinks and snacks. I have a small desk in my bedroom and I study on it. I also have a big closet for my clothes and my brother's clothes.

8 Choose the correct answer:

1- closet 2- oven 3- apartment
4- elevator 5- keep 6- architect
7- relax 8- grow 9- furniture
10- balcony 11- armchair 12- pots
13- closet 14- oven 15- elevator

9 Read and write the correct form:

1- didn't 2- unhappy 3- went 4- travel
5- unsafe 6- On 7- was 8- In
9- unfriendly 10- visited 11- uncomfortable
12- eat 13- were 14- met 15- On 16-unsafe
17- On 18- were 19- use 20- on

10 Choose the correct answer:

1- uncomfortable 2- unhappy 3- unfriendly
4- fair 5- unlucky 6- unsafe
7- on 8- in 9- on 10- of

11 Choose the correct answer:

1- was 2- were 3- was 4- was
5- were 6- was 7- were 8- fell
9- saw 10- kicked 11- didn't
12- gave 13- weren't 14- break
15- travel 16- put 17- happened
18- broke 19- catch 20- say
21- went 22- cleaned 23- gave
24- write 25- drove 26- lived 27- buy
28- helped 29- watched 30- did

Unit (7) Test (1)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1) Nile 2) mud 3) cool 4) walls

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- bathroom 2- unhappy 3- floors

3 Read and complete the text:

1) floors 2) countryside 3) garden

4 Read and answer:

1- dirty 2- interesting
3- They have to follow their school rules.
4- It teaches them how to be good people.
5- The school is the place where students learn. So students have to follow school rules.

5 Put the words in the correct order:

1- They used papyrus to cover the windows.
2- Do you live in an apartment or a house?

6 Read and write the correct form:

1- uncomfortable 2- came

7 Punctuate the sentences:

1- **H**ow did the Egyptians build their homes in the past?
2- **A** good school should be clean and tidy.

8 Write a paragraph:

My name is Mohamed. I love reading. I want to read "Alice in Wonderland." It's a story about magic. I want to read it because it seems very interesting, and my mom recommended it. When I read it, I will ask my friend, Omar, to read it, and we will discuss it together.

Unit (8)

1 Read and complete the text:

1) careful 2) cold 3) throat

2 Read and complete the text:

1) balanced 2) exercise 3) sleep

3 Read and complete the text:

1) wounds 2) kill 3) heal

4 Read and complete the text:

1) unwell 2) hospital 3) staff

5 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Three of my friends have a cough.
2- Which is the most popular food?
3- Amr has an earache from swimming.
4- It's important to eat healthy foods.
5- The coach told us to be careful.
6- Does Nader have a headache?
7-You should do some exercise every day.
8- I'm worried about my friends.
9- I think she went to the dentist.
10- What do you do to stay healthy?
11- What is the matter, Dina?
12- It's important to get enough sleep.
13- The elephant is the biggest land animal in the world.
14- The hospital is often crowded.

6 Punctuate the sentences:

1- What's your favorite drink?
2- We don't go to school on Friday.
3- This museum is called the Egyptian Museum.
4- Eggs, cheese, jam and beans are different foods.
5- Mariam doesn't have lunch at school.
6- Does Adel go to restaurants with his family?
7- I go to the club with my friend Ehab on Saturdays.
8- He likes figs, bananas, apples and oranges.

7 Read and answer:

1- pupils 2- weak
3- He goes to the farm on foot.
4- He is 67 years old.
5- He has four children.

8 Write a paragraph:

"The hospital"

The hospital is a very important place. Doctors and nurses work hard in hospitals to help treat patients and make them feel better. Last time I went to a hospital, they took care of my broken arm. I want to be a nurse when I grow up.

9 Choose the correct answer:

1- diet 2- sleep 3- Playing 4- stay
5- get 6- drink 7- ocean 8- sore
9- backache 10- earache
11- toothache 12- ankle

10 Read and write the correct form:

1- illegal 2- unwell 3- has 4- immoral
5- irresponsible 6- hurt 7- impossible
8- unhappy 9- have 10- unsafe 11- unfit
12- have 13- impolite 14- irregular 15-hurts

11 Add the prefix:

1- unhappy 2- impossible 3- immoral
4- impolite 5- illegal 6- unfit 7- unsafe
8- irresponsible 9- unwell 10- irregular

12 Choose the correct answer:

1- has 2- have 3- have 4- have
5- has 6- have 7- doesn't 8- don't
9- have 10- have 11- Does 12- Do
13- have 14- doesn't 15- have 16- have

Unit (8) Test (2)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1) kill 2) wounds 3) careful 4) treatment

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- throat 2- treats 3- care 4- healthy

3 Read and complete the text:

1) problems 2) hurt 3) earache

4 Read and answer:

1- ill 2- clinic 3- Yara's friends.
4- Doctor Sherif examined her.
5- He gave her some medicine.

5 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Why is water important for your health?
2- It's important to keep your body moving.

6 Read and write the correct form:

1- unusual 2- has

7 Punctuate the sentences:

1- No, my friend Nader isn't coming today.
2- Yara didn't go to school on Thursday.

8 Write a paragraph:

"Having a healthy diet"

Eating the right food is important to stay healthy. You can get proteins from fish and meat. Vegetables and fruits have vitamins in them. You should be careful with carbohydrates and fats. A balanced diet is important to stay fit.

Unit (9)

1 Read and complete the text:

1) parrots 2) penguins 3) cold

2 Read and complete the text:

1) useless 2) ungrateful 3) comfortable

3 Put the words in the correct order:

1- She traveled to many great places.
2- What birds did you see?
3- We're talking about unusual animals.
4- Could you go near the lions?
5- Let's stop under that tree.
6- I'm doing a project on bats.
7- Why is it important to plant trees?
8- There are no nuts on branches.
9- I would like to be a scribe.
10- How can you be ungrateful?

11- Where does water come from?
12- She's very friendly in classroom.
13- We cannot see water vapor.
14- What's your favorite unusual animal?

4 Punctuate the sentences:

1- He can't speak Italian.
2- Where did Samy go yesterday?
3- Last Monday, Amir visited his uncle.
4- Where are you from, Tom?
5- What's the matter with you, Hend?
6- Does Mona have a fever?
7- Where did Ramez go yesterday?
8- Lions live in Africa.
9- Can I go out with my friend Hazem?
10- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- park 2- traveler 3- panda 4- meet
5- dolphin 6- nice 7- penguin 8- don't thank
9- parrot 10- wind 11- lion 12- bat
13- can't 14- snail 15- leaves
16- kangaroo 17- pouch 18- shelter

6 Read and write the correct form:

1- fly 2- couldn't 3- Could 4- take
5- couldn't 6- can 7- play 8- couldn't
9- couldn't 10- fly 11- can 12- can't

7 Choose the correct answer:

1- couldn't 2- couldn't 3- can 4- could
5- can – can't 6- Could 7- can 8- could
9- could 10- can't 11- can 12- Can
13- could 14- couldn't 15- can't 16- couldn't
17- couldn't 18- couldn't 19- see 20- make

8 Choose the correct answer:

1- teaches 2- teacher 3- footballer
4- football 5- climber 6- climb
7- travel 8- traveler

9 Choose the correct answer:

1- interested 2- interesting 3- bored
4- boring 5- surprised 6- surprising
7- annoyed 8- annoying 9- tired 10- tiring

Unit (9) Test (3)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1) old 2) trunk 3) travelers 4) towns

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- exhausted 2- habitat 3- ungrateful

3 Read and complete the text:

1) kangaroos 2) pouch 3) hiding

4 Read and answer:

1- in front of 2- meat
3- They hide behind a tree and attack any animal that pass by it. They jump over them like a lion and eat them.
4- They live in different places where there are trees and grasslands.
5- Tigers

5 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Where did Ramez go yesterday?
2- Amir wants to talk about wildlife.

6 Read and write the correct form:

1- Could 2- speak

7 Punctuate the sentence:

1- What's Hamdy's favorite animal?
2- Parrots can't swim.

8 Write a paragraph:

Last week, I went to the zoo with my family. We saw many different animals and birds. My favorite animal was the giraffe. It was very tall, and it ate from my hand! I also liked the colored parrots. We had some burgers for lunch, and I drank orange juice. I was very happy.

Unit (10)

1 Read and complete the text:

1) life 2) cuisine 3) traditional

2 Read and complete the text:

1) trip 2) bridges 3) restaurants

3 Read and complete the text:

1) beach 2) city 3) International

4 Read and complete the text:

1) town 2) stores 3) walking

5 Read and complete the text:

1) feed 2) waterpark 3) picnics

6 Put the words in the correct order:

1- I moved to Alexandria last year.
2- This is one of the most exciting cities.
3- My favorite place is the beach.
4- It's important to eat healthy foods.

5- This is a very important place.
6- There are some amazing treasures.
7- Keep the environment clean.
8- He decided to go to sleep.
9- Is this new bike for me?
10- I will take them to the market.

7 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Who is from Aswan?
2- There's a big station in my town.
3- Let's visit Al Fayoum.
4- Where do you live, Ali?
5- My grandfather lives in Alexandria.
6- I want to be a doctor like my aunt Dalia.

8 Write a paragraph:
New Alamein is in the north of Egypt. It's a beautiful place and I want to go there on a vacation. It has a big green lake, and there is the International Park where people go and have picnics.

9 Read and answer:
1- four 2- happy 3- They took some bread, cheese and beans. They took hot tea and a camera too.
4- The tourists rode camels and horses. They took many photographs of the Pyramids and the Sphinx.
5- A trip to the Pyramids

10 Choose the correct answer:
1- factories 2- library 3- borrow 4- bake
5- station 6- foolish 7- cuisine 8- recognize
9- shopping mall 10- ingredients
11- entertain 12- mint 13- beach
14- grow 15- restaurant 16- market

11 Read and write the correct form:
1- Open 2- Sit 3- on 4- pick 5- straight
6- on 7- Put 8- waste 9- Cross 10- on
11- get 12- get 13- keep 14- do 15- cross

12 Choose the correct answer:
1- write 2- Don't 3- eat 4- Drive
5- Don't lose 6- Don't use 7- Don't lose
8- Stop 9- Don't 10- Do 11- shout 12- do

13 Choose the correct answer:
1- to 2- on 3- on 4- across 5- on
6- near 7- how 8- where

Unit (10) Test (4)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:
1) north 2) city 3) beach 4) Library

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- Factories 2- Traders 3- attraction

3 Read and complete the text:
1) vacation 2) city 3) modern

4 Read and answer:
1- popular 2- high
3- You can see the Nile, all of Cairo and Giza. 4- By using the lifts.
5- Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Egypt.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- What book are you reading?
2- You can visit the International Park.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- on 2- Don't

7 Punctuate the sentence:
1- I'm visiting Alexandria.
2- We should keep the Nile clean.

8 Write a paragraph:
"A vacation to Aswan"
Last January, I went on a mid-year vacation to Aswan, in the south of Egypt. It was a very beautiful place, and the people there were very kind. We saw many ancient Egyptian monuments and temples, and we visited the High Dam. It was a fantastic trip!

Unit (11)

1 Read and complete the text:
1) hotel 2) view 3) beach

2 Read and complete the text:
1) tour 2) exploring 3) markets

3 Read and complete the text:
1) race 2) dunes 3) wandering

4 Read and complete the text:
1) agreed 2) picnic 3) grass

5 Read and complete the text:
1) buildings 2) relax 3) flowers

6 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Mona is traveling to Aswan by plane.
2- Where are Nadia and Magda now?
3- Today, she is packing her suitcase.
4- What can you do there?
5- They are playing in the yard.
6- I would like to visit Zambia.
7- The Dead Sea mud is good for skin.
8- We will stop on the way for lunch.
9- I bought a lovely colorful rug.
10- They were in India last week.
11- There's a huge swimming pool.
12- Farouk is a farmer in Aswan.
13- Singapore is a wonderful city.
14- She could swim in a river.
15- Yesterday, we went on a boat trip.
16- We will fly to Japan tomorrow.
17- She's traveling to Canada by plane.
18- What do you take on vacation?

7 Punctuate the sentences:
1- Let's play basketball.
2- What's your favorite food, Heba?
3- I'm having a party on Sunday.
4- What vacation activities do you enjoy, Nagwa? 5- I love Egypt.
6- How do you feel now, Adel?

8 Choose the correct answer:
1- traditional 2- passport 3- awesome 4- beach 5- check 6- hotel 7- day trip 8- closet 9- diary 10- pool 11- go 12- trip 13- benches 14- airport 15- wander 16- ticket 17- entry 18- dunes

9 Read and write the correct form:
1- on 2- at 3- at 4- on 5- on 6- in 7- in 8- in 9- on 10- at 11- in 12- on 13- On 14- on 15- in 16- in 17- in 18- at

10 Choose the correct answer:
1- in 2- on 3- at 4- in
5- on 6- on 7- on 8- in
9- on 10- in 11- at 12- On
13- at 14- in 15- in 16- at

Unit (11) Test (4)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:
1) vacation 2) plane 3) rain 4) swimming

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- low 2- theme park 3- right

3 Read and complete the text:
1) playground 2) bench 3) felt 4) awesome

4 Read and answer:
1- plane 2- Mohamed's home
3- He's British.
4- It refers to Mohamed's home.
5- Yesterday, Mohamed went to the airport. His pen friend, Bell, was coming from London.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- I spent hours in the museum.
2- Who did Marwan meet at the park?

6 Read and write: 1- on 2- at

7 Punctuate the sentences:
1- No, I didn't visit Paris, London, Madrid or Athens.
2- Cairo is Mohamed's favorite city.

8 Write a paragraph:
"A visit to Al-Azhar Park"
On my last vacation, I went with my family to Al-Azhar Park. We had a picnic, and we sat on benches near the grass. We had a traditional Egyptian meal for breakfast. We played a lot in this large park. It was very beautiful and green.

Part 3 School Exams

Exam (1)

1 Listen and choose:
1- apartment 2- bedrooms 3- two

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- go 2- wildlife 3- see 4- birds

3 Read and answer:
1- She came from China.
2- She works in a big hospital.
3- a family 4- mountain 5- math

4 Choose the correct answer:
1- earache 2- passport
3- uncomfortable 4- Could 5- meet

5 Reorder the following sentences:
1- Lions can run very fast.

2- Don't be late tomorrow.
3- How do you feel?
4- Everyone is enjoying the trail.
5- Honey is used as a treatment.

The first Term backwards evaluation

1 Choose the correct answer:

1- racket 2- drink 3- an
4- doing 5- do 6- eggs
7- pitch 8- works 9- Doctors 10- Island

Exam (2)

1 Listen and choose:

1- exciting 2- rains 3- fun

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- living 2- great 3- old 4- born

3 Read and answer:

1- In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years.
2- It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago.
3- kill 4- milk 5- knee

4 Choose the correct answer:

1- visited 2- have 3- uncomfortable
4- closet 5- Could

5 Reorder the following sentences:

1- The furniture was very different in Ancient Egypt.
2- I have a sore throat.
3- What is better about this apartment?
4- Is Ahmed a clever student?
5- Snails don't have legs or arms.

Exam (3)

1 Listen and choose:

1- six 2- breakfast 3- honey

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- going 2- doctor's
3- matter 4- have

3 Read and answer:

1- Magdy is 15 years old.
2- He has a farm.
3- four 4- happy 5- bedroom

4 Choose the correct answer:

1- restaurant 2- comfortable 3- went
4- see 5- penguin

5 Reorder the following sentences:

1- Do you have a headache?
2- I can play basketball.
3- Don't eat in the library.
4- The balcony is fantastic.
5- We should stay home.

The first Term backwards evaluation

1 Choose the correct answer:

1- necklace 2- must 3- jobs
4- reading 5- any 6- speaking

Exam (4)

1 Listen and choose:

1- Alexandria 2- activities
3- sandcastle 4- beach

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- mud 2- has
3- kill 4- to

3 Read and complete the text:

1- right 2- next 3- armchair

4 Read and answer the question:

1- ten 2- village
3- Farmers grow onions, tomatoes and rice. They grow apples and oranges, too.
4- Yes, I do.
5- Amal and her family live in a village near the river. Farmers grow many fruits and vegetables there.

5 Put the words in the correct order:

1- I cut my knee last week.
2- The tree gives us shade and shelter.

6 Read and write the correct form:

1- can 2- is

7 Punctuate the following:

1- How often does Salma watch TV?
2- Egypt's coast includes two seas.

8 Write a paragraph of (40) words:

My Favorite sea animal

My favo''e sea animal is the dolphin. Dolphins are intelligent and friendly creatures that love to play. They swim in groups and can jump high out of the water. Watching them is always exciting and makes me smile!

Exam (4)

1 Listen and choose:

1- Nile 2- washing
3- mud 4- flat

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- balcony 2- injection 3- shade

3 Read and complete the text:

1- share 2- left 3- posters

4 Read and answer the question:

1- ill 2- medicine
3- Nour didn't go to school yesterday because she was sick. She had a cough and a sore throat. She was very hot and didn't feel well.
4- He asked her to drink a lot of water and stay in bed.
5- Nour didn't go to school yesterday because she was sick. The doctor gave her some medicine.

5 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Ancient Egyptians slept on reed mats.
2- I cut my knee last week.

6 Read and write the correct form:

1- has 2- on

7 Punctuate the following:

1- Is there a bank near here?
2- Amr and Maged are tall.

8 Write a paragraph of (40) words:

The Zoo

Last weekend, I visited the zoo with my family. We saw many amazing animals like lions, tigers, and monkeys. The zoo was big and full of nice things. We watched the elephants in water and the colorful birds fly. I gave some food to goats! It was a fun day filled with laughter and learning about animals. I can't wait to go again!

Exam (5)

1 Listen and choose:

1- Cairo 2- metal
3- Egyptian Museum 4- trees and flowers

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- pills 2- penguins 3- elevator

3 Read and complete the text:

1- blogging 2- unusual 3- architect

4 Read and answer the question:

1- basketball 2- friends
3- Basketball is her favorite sport.
4- There are five players in the team.
5- Eman is in grade five. Basketball is her favorite sport.

5 Put the words in the correct order:

1- Why is it important to plant trees?
2- Yesterday, we went on a boat trip.

6 Read and write the correct form:

1- can 2- doing

6 Punctuate the following:

1- What's your favorite animal, Ahmed?
2- Yes, I like chicken fish and mango.

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words:

My City

My city is a clean place full of life. There are tall buildings, parks, and busy streets. Every weekend, people visit the markets to buy fresh fruits and things they need. We have a big library where I love to read, and the parks are good for playing with friends.

Exam (7)

1 Listen and choose:

1- sea animal 2- grass
3- face 4- sea cow

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- bacteria 2- lost 3- restaurant

3 Read and complete the text:

1- mats 2- papyrus 3- insects

4 Read and answer the question:

1- comfortable 2- boat
3- London is one of the most exciting cities in the world.
4- You can see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Themes.
5- It often rains.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- The hospital is a busy place.
2- Does he have a sore throat?

6 Punctuate the following:
1-Thank you for helping me.
2- Why is it good to eat healthy food, Adel?

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words:

Honey

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. You can mix honey with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

Exam (8)

1 Listen and choose:
1- Alexandria 2- aunt
3- lunch 4- walk

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- snail 2- headache 3- passport

3 Read and complete the text:
1- sit 2- insects 3- wooden

4 Read and answer the question:
1- healthy 2- water
3- We should eat good food like fruit and vegetables to keep our body strong.
4- Because they have lots of sugar that's not good for us.
5- Staying healthy is easy! Just eat well, drink water, and play outside for a happy, healthy life!

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- The howler monkey lives in the jungle.
2- Keep quiet when you are in a library.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- at 2- amazing

7 Punctuate the following:
1- Excuse me, where is the bank?
2- My favorite animal is the monkey.

8 Write a paragraph of (40) words:

My Favorite Unusual Animal

My favorite unusual animal is the squirrel. These clever little animals are known for their bushy tails and energetic nature. Squirrels can climb trees quickly and take nuts to keep for winter. I love watching them jump from branch to branch, always busy and full of life! They make me smile.

Exam (9)

1 Listen and choose:
1- healthy 2- fruit
3- exercise 4- moving

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- local 2- sad 3- chickens

3 Read and complete the text:
1- honey 2- treatment 3- special

4 Read and answer the question:
1- howler monkeys 2- scientist
3- A local villager saved him.
4- For work.
5- My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. Three years ago, something frightening happened to him and he was lucky.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Where did people build their houses?
2- This week, I'm writing about unusual homes.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- have 2- eat

7 Punctuate the following:
1- Why should we look after our health?
2- Ramez went to the wildlife park.

8 Write a paragraph of (40) words:

My Favorite Animal

My favorite pet animal is a cat! Cats are playful and naughty. They love to run after toys and know about their homes. I enjoy watching my cat play and sleep in nice places at home. Cats can be very kind. They make great friends and always make my day beautiful!

Exam (10)

1 Listen and choose:
1- student 2- help
3- library 4- English

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- playground 2- relaxing 3- suitcase

3 Read and complete the text:
1- hospital 2- treatment 3- special

4 Read and answer the question:
1- new 2- apartment
3- Mona moved to a new apartment last week.
4- There are three bedrooms.
5- Last week.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- Do you like living here?
2- Ramez went to a wildlife park.

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- rain 2- have

7 Punctuate the following:
1- Do you like fish?
2- Our town is perfect.

8 Write a paragraph of (40) words:

My Favorite Animal

My favorite pet animal is a cat! Cats are playful and naughty. They love to run after toys and know about their homes. I enjoy watching my cat play and sleep in nice places at home. Cats can be very kind. They make great friends and always make my day beautiful!

Exam (11)

1 Listen and choose:
1- scientist 2- South
3- friendly 4- monkeys

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- living room 2- drinking 3- toothache

3 Read and complete the text:
1- park 2- parrot 3- sad

4 Read and answer the question:
1- wonderful 2- excellent
3- There is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in!
4- There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food.
5- In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school.

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1- We moved to a new house.
2- Do you like honey?

6 Read and write the correct form:
1- have 2- ride

7 Punctuate the following:
1-We all love Egypt.
2- How about having some juice?

8 Write a paragraph of (40) words:

My Favorite Animal

My favorite pet animal is a cat! Cats are playful and naughty. They love to run after toys and know about their homes. I enjoy watching my cat play and sleep in nice places at home. Cats can be very kind. They make great friends and always make my day beautiful!